

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13

Mobile Application Single Sign-On

Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B), and How-To Guides (C)

Paul Grassi
Bill Fisher
Santos Jha
William Kim
Taylor McCorkill
Joseph Portner
Mark Russell
Sudhi Umarji

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>



NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13

Mobile Application Single Sign-On Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

*Includes Executive Summary (A); Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics (B),
and How-To Guides (C)*

Paul Grassi
*Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory*

Bill Fisher
*National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
Information Technology Laboratory*

Santos Jha
William Kim
Taylor McCorkill
Joseph Portner
Mark Russell
Sudhi Umarji
*The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA*

DRAFT

April 2018



U.S. Department of Commerce
Wilbur Ross, Secretary

National Institute of Standards and Technology
Walter Copan, Undersecretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology and Director

DRAFT

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13A

Mobile Application Single Sign-On

Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

Volume A:
Executive Summary

Paul Grassi

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Bill Fisher

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
Information Technology Laboratory

Santos Jha

William Kim

Taylor McCorkill

Joseph Portner

Mark Russell

Sudhi Umarji

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

April 2018

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>

NIST
National Institute of
Standards and Technology
U.S. Department of Commerce



1 Executive Summary

- 2 ▪ On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first
3 responders (PSFRs) can protect life and property during an emergency.
- 4 ▪ This public safety information, often needing to be accessed via mobile or portable devices,
5 routinely includes sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information (PII), law
6 enforcement sensitive (LES) information, or protected health information (PHI).
- 7 ▪ Because the communications are critical to public safety and may include sensitive information,
8 robust and reliable authentication mechanisms that do not hinder the delivery of emergency
9 services are required.
- 10 ▪ In collaboration with the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Public Safety
11 Communications Research (PSCR) laboratory, and industry stakeholders, the National
12 Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) at NIST built a laboratory environment to
13 demonstrate standards-based technologies that can enable PSFRs to gain access to public safety
14 information efficiently and securely by using mobile devices.
- 15 ▪ The technologies demonstrated are currently available and include (1) single sign-on (SSO)
16 capabilities that reduce the number of credentials that need to be managed by public safety
17 personnel, and reduce the time and effort that individuals spend authenticating themselves;
18 (2) identity federation that can improve the ability to authenticate personnel across Public
19 Safety Organization (PSO) boundaries; and (3) multifactor authentication (MFA) that enables
20 authentication with a high level of assurance.
- 21 ▪ This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide describes how organizations can implement these
22 technologies to enhance public safety mission capabilities using standards-based commercially
23 available or open-source products. The technologies described facilitate interoperability among
24 diverse mobile platforms, applications, relying parties (RPs), identity providers (IdPs), and
25 public-sector and private-sector participants, irrespective of the application development
26 platform used in their construction.

27 CHALLENGE

28 Recent natural and man-made disasters and crises have highlighted the importance of efficient and
29 secure access to critical information by PSFRs. For decades, much of this information was broadcast to
30 PSFRs by voice over radio. More recently, many PSOs have transitioned to a hybrid model that includes
31 automated access to much of this information via ruggedized mobile laptops and tablets. Further
32 advances in technology have resulted in increasing reliance on smartphones, or similar portable devices,
33 for field access to public safety information. The increasing reliance on these devices has driven the use
34 of “native app”-based interfaces to access information, in addition to more traditional browser-based
35 methods.

36 Many PSOs are in the process of transitioning from traditional land-based mobile communications to
37 high-speed, regional or nationwide, wireless broadband networks (e.g., FirstNet). These emerging “5G”
38 systems employ Internet Protocol (IP)-based communications to provide secure and interoperable
39 public safety communications to support initiatives, such as Criminal Justice Information Services (CJIS);
40 Regional Information Sharing Systems (RISS); and international justice and public safety services, such as
41 those provided by NLETS. This transition will foster critically needed interoperability within and among

42 jurisdictions, but it will create a significant increase in the number of mobile devices that PSOs will need
43 to manage.

44 Current PSO authentication services may not be sustainable in the face of this growth. There are needs
45 to improve security assurance, limit authentication requirements that are imposed on users
46 (e.g., reduce the number of passwords that are required), improve the usability and efficiency of user
47 account management, and share identities across jurisdictional boundaries. Currently, there is no single
48 management or administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations operate in a
49 variety of environments with different authentication requirements. Standards-based solutions are
50 needed to support technical interoperability and a diverse set of PSO environments.

51 SOLUTION

52 To address these challenges, the NCCoE brought together common identity and software applications
53 providers to demonstrate how a PSO can implement mobile native and web application SSO, access
54 federated identity sources, and implement MFA. SSO limits the time and effort that PSFR personnel
55 spend authenticating, while MFA provides PSOs with adequate confidence that users who are accessing
56 their information are who they say they are. The architecture supports identity federation that allows
57 PSOs to share identity assertions between applications and across PSO jurisdictions. A combination of all
58 of these capabilities can allow PSFR personnel to authenticate—say, at the beginning of their shift—and
59 leverage that high-assurance authentication to gain cross-jurisdictional access to many other mobile
60 native and web applications while on duty.

61 The guide provides:

- 62 ▪ a detailed example solution and capabilities that address risk and security controls
- 63 ▪ a demonstration of the approach using commercially available products
- 64 ▪ “how-to” instructions for implementers and security engineers on integrating and configuring
65 the example solution into their organization’s enterprise, in a manner that achieves security
66 goals with minimum impact on operational efficiency and expense

67 The NCCoE assembled existing technologies that support the following standards:

- 68 ▪ Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Request for Comments (RFC) 8252, *O Auth 2.0 for*
69 *Native Apps*
- 70 ▪ FIDO Universal Second Factor (U2F) and Universal Authentication Framework (UAF)
- 71 ▪ Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) 2.0
- 72 ▪ OpenID Connect (OIDC) 1.0

73 Commercial, standards-based products, such as the ones that we used, are readily available and
74 interoperable with existing information technology (IT) infrastructures. While the NCCoE used a suite of
75 commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does not endorse these particular products,
76 nor does it guarantee compliance with any regulatory initiatives. Your organization’s information
77 security experts should identify the products that will best integrate with your existing tools and IT
78 system infrastructure. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to these guidelines
79 in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution.

80 **BENEFITS**

81 The NCCoE’s practice guide, *Mobile Application Single Sign-On*, can help PSOs:

- 82 ▪ define requirements for mobile application SSO and MFA implementation
- 83 ▪ improve interoperability between mobile platforms, applications, and IdPs, regardless of the
- 84 application development platform used in their construction
- 85 ▪ enhance the efficiency of PSFRs by reducing the number of authentication steps, the time
- 86 needed to get access to critical data, and the number of credentials that need to be managed
- 87 ▪ support a diverse set of credentials, enabling PSOs to choose an authentication solution that
- 88 best meets their individual needs

89 **SHARE YOUR FEEDBACK**

90 You can view or download the guide at <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>. Help
91 the NCCoE make this guide better by sharing your thoughts with us as you read the guide. If you adopt
92 this solution for your own organization, please share your experience and advice with us. We recognize
93 that technical solutions alone will not fully enable the benefits of our solution, so we encourage
94 organizations to share lessons learned and best practices for transforming the processes associated with
95 implementing this guide.

96 To provide comments or to learn more by arranging a demonstration of this example implementation,
97 contact the NCCoE at psfr-nccoe@nist.gov.

98 **TECHNOLOGY PARTNERS/COLLABORATORS**

99 Organizations participating in this project submitted their capabilities in response to an open call in the
100 Federal Register for all sources of relevant security capabilities from academia and industry (vendors
101 and integrators). The following respondents with relevant capabilities or product components (identified
102 as “Technology Partners/Collaborators” herein) signed a Cooperative Research and Development
103 Agreement to collaborate with NIST in a consortium to build this example solution.



104
105 Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company
106 logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an
107 experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special
108 status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it
109 intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available
110 for the purpose.

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses’ most pressing cybersecurity challenges. Through this collaboration, the NCCoE develops modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions demonstrating how to apply standards and best practices using commercially available technology.

LEARN MORE

Visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov>
nccoe@nist.gov
301-975-0200

DRAFT

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13B

Mobile Application Single Sign-On

Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

Volume B:
Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics

Paul Grassi

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Bill Fisher

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
Information Technology Laboratory

Spike E. Dog

Santos Jha

William Kim

Taylor McCorkill

Joseph Portner

Mark Russell

Sudhi Umarji

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

William C. Barker

Dakota Consulting
Silver Spring, MD

April 2018

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:

<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-ss0>

DRAFT

DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-13B, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-13B, 73 pages, (April 2018), CODEN: NSPUE2

FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: psfr-nccoe@nist.gov.

Public comment period: April 16, 2018 through June 18, 2018

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
National Institute of Standards and Technology
100 Bureau Drive
Mailstop 2002
Gaithersburg, MD 20899
Email: nccoe@nist.gov

NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in IT security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

ABSTRACT

On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first responder (PSFR) personnel can deliver the proper care and support during an emergency. This requirement necessitates heavy reliance on mobile platforms while in the field, which may be used to access sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information (PII), law enforcement sensitive (LES) information, or protected health information (PHI). However, complex authentication requirements can hinder the process of providing emergency services, and any delay—even seconds—can become a matter of life or death.

In collaboration with NIST'S Public Safety Communications Research lab (PSCR) and industry stakeholders, the NCCoE aims to help PSFR personnel to efficiently and securely gain access to mission data via mobile devices and applications (apps). This practice guide describes a reference design for multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) for native and web apps, while improving interoperability between mobile platforms, apps, and identity providers, irrespective of the app development platform used in their construction. This NCCoE practice guide details a collaborative

effort between the NCCoE and technology providers to demonstrate a standards-based approach using commercially available and open-source products.

This guide discusses potential security risks facing organizations, benefits that may result from the implementation of an MFA/MSSO system, and the approach that the NCCoE took in developing a reference architecture and build. This guide includes a discussion of major architecture design considerations, an explanation of the security characteristics achieved by the reference design, and a mapping of the security characteristics to applicable standards and security control families.

For parties interested in adopting all or part of the NCCoE reference architecture, this guide includes a detailed description of the installation, configuration, and integration of all components.

KEYWORDS

access control; authentication; authorization; identity; identity management; identity provider; single sign-on; relying party

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson	NIST NCCoE
Tim McBride	NIST NCCoE
Jeff Vettrano	FirstNet
FNU Rajan	FirstNet
John Beltz	NIST Public Safety Communications Research Lab
Chris Leggett	Ping Identity
Paul Madsen	Ping Identity
John Bradley	Yubico
Adam Migus	Yubico
Derek Hanson	Yubico
Adam Lewis	Motorola Solutions
Mike Korus	Motorola Solutions
Dan Griesmann	Motorola Solutions

Name	Organization
Arshad Noor	StrongAuth
Pushkar Marathe	StrongAuth
Max Smyth	StrongAuth
Scott Wong	StrongAuth
Akhilesh Sah	Nok Nok Labs
Avinash Umap	Nok Nok Labs

The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Ping Identity	Federation Server
Motorola Solutions	Mobile Apps
Yubico	External Authenticators
Nok Nok Labs	Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Universal Authentication Framework (UAF) Server
StrongAuth	FIDO Universal Second Factor (U2F) Server

1	Contents	
2	1 Summary	1
3	1.1 Challenge	1
4	1.1.1 Easing User Authentication Requirements	2
5	1.1.2 Improving Authentication Assurance	2
6	1.1.3 Federating Identities and User Account Management.....	2
7	1.2 Solution.....	3
8	1.3 Benefits.....	4
9	2 How to Use This Guide	4
10	2.1 Typographical Conventions	6
11	3 Approach	6
12	3.1 Audience.....	7
13	3.2 Scope	7
14	3.3 Assumptions	8
15	3.4 Business Case.....	9
16	3.5 Risk Assessment	9
17	3.5.1 PSFR Risks.....	10
18	3.5.2 Mobile Ecosystem Threats.....	10
19	3.5.3 Authentication and Federation Threats.....	14
20	3.6 Systems Engineering.....	15
21	3.7 Technologies.....	15
22	4 Architecture	17
23	4.1 General Architectural Considerations	17
24	4.1.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries	18
25	4.1.2 Identity Federation	19
26	4.1.3 FIDO and Authenticator Types.....	19
27	4.2 High-Level Architecture.....	19
28	4.3 Detailed Architecture Flow.....	22

29	4.3.1 SAML and U2F Authentication Flow	22
30	4.3.2 OpenID Connect and UAF Authentication Flow.....	27
31	4.4 Single Sign-On with the OAuth Authorization Flow	30
32	4.5 App Developer Perspective of the Build	31
33	4.6 Identity Provider Perspective of the Build	32
34	4.7 Token and Session Management	32
35	5 Security Characteristics Analysis.....	33
36	5.1 Assumptions and Limitations	33
37	5.2 Threat Analysis	34
38	5.2.1 Mobile Ecosystem Threat Analysis	34
39	5.2.2 Authentication and Federation Threat Analysis	36
40	5.3 Scenarios and Findings	38
41	6 Future Build Considerations	39
42	6.1 Single Logout	39
43	6.2 Shared Devices	39
44	6.3 Step-Up Authentication.....	39
45	Appendix A Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core.....	40
46	Appendix B: Assumptions Underlying the Build	44
47	B.1 Identity Proofing.....	44
48	B.2 Mobile Device Security.....	44
49	B.3 Mobile Application Security	44
50	B.4 Enterprise Mobility Management	46
51	B.5 FIDO Enrollment Process.....	47
52	Appendix C: Architectural Considerations for the Mobile Application Single	
53	Sign-On Build	48
54	C.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries	48
55	C.1.1 Attributes and Authorization	50
56	C.2 Federation	51

57	C.3 Authenticator Types	52
58	Appendix D List of Acronyms	59
59	Appendix E References.....	62
60	List of Figures	
61	Figure 3-1 The Mobile Ecosystem	13
62	Figure 4-1 High-Level U2F Architecture	20
63	Figure 4-2 High-Level UAF Architecture.....	21
64	Figure 4-3 SAML and U2F Sequence Diagram	23
65	Figure 4-4 OIDC and UAF Sequence Diagram	27
66	Figure 5-1 Mobile Device Technology Stack.....	35
67	List of Tables	
68	Table 3-1 Threat Classes and Categories	12
69	Table 3-2 Products and Technologies.....	16
70	Table A-1 CSF Categories	40
71	Table C-1 FAL Requirements	52
72	Table C-2 AAL Summary of Requirements	54

73 1 Summary

74 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), with the National Institute of Standards and
75 Technology's (NIST's) Public Safety Communications Research (PSCR) lab, is helping the public safety and
76 first responder (PSFR) community address the challenge of securing sensitive information accessed on
77 mobile applications (apps). The Mobile Application Single Sign-On (SSO) Project is a collaborative effort
78 with industry and the information technology (IT) community, including vendors of cybersecurity
79 solutions.

80 This project aims to help PSFR personnel efficiently and securely gain access to mission-critical data via
81 mobile devices and applications through mobile SSO, identity federation, and multifactor authentication
82 (MFA) solutions for native and web applications by using standards-based commercially available and
83 open-source products.

84 The reference design herein:

- 85 ▪ provides a detailed example solution and capabilities that address risk and security controls
- 86 ▪ demonstrates standards-based MFA, identity federation, and mobile SSO for native and web
87 applications
- 88 ▪ supports multiple authentication methods, considering unique environmental constraints faced
89 by first responders in emergency medical services, law enforcement, and fire services

90 1.1 Challenge

91 On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that PSFR personnel can protect life and
92 property during an emergency. Mobile platforms offer a significant operational advantage to public
93 safety stakeholders by providing access to mission-critical information and services while deployed in
94 the field, during training and exercises, or when participating in the day-to-day business and preparing
95 for emergencies during non-emergency periods. These advantages can be limited if complex
96 authentication requirements hinder PSFR personnel, especially when a delay—even seconds—is a
97 matter of containing or exacerbating an emergency situation. PSFR communities are challenged with
98 implementing efficient and secure authentication mechanisms to protect access to this sensitive
99 information, while meeting the demands of their operational environment.

100 Many public safety organizations (PSOs) are in the process of transitioning from traditional land-based
101 mobile communications to high-speed, regional or nationwide, wireless broadband networks (e.g., First
102 Responder Network Authority [FirstNet]). These emerging 5G systems employ internet protocol (IP)-
103 based communications to provide secure and interoperable public safety communications to support
104 initiatives, such as Criminal Justice Information Services (CJIS); Regional Information Sharing Systems
105 (RISS); and international justice and public safety services, such as those provided by Nlets, the
106 International Justice and Public Safety Network. This transition will foster critically needed

107 interoperability within and among jurisdictions, but will create a significant increase in the number of
108 mobile Android and iPhone operating system (iOS) devices that PSOs will need to manage.

109 Current PSO authentication services may not be sustainable in the face of this growth. There are needs
110 to improve security assurance, limit authentication requirements that are imposed on users (e.g., avoid
111 the number of passwords that are required), improve the usability and efficiency of user account
112 management, and share identities across jurisdictional boundaries. Currently, there is no single
113 management or administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations operate in a
114 variety of environments with different authentication requirements. Standards-based solutions are
115 needed to support technical interoperability and this diverse set of PSO environments.

116 1.1.1 Easing User Authentication Requirements

117 Many devices that digitally access public safety information employ different software applications to
118 access different information sources. Single-factor authentication processes, usually passwords, are
119 most commonly required to access each of these applications. Users often need different passwords or
120 personal identification numbers (PINs) for each application used to access critical information.
121 Authentication prompts, such as entering complex passwords on a small touchscreen for each
122 application, can hinder PSFRs. There is an operational need for the mobile systems on which they rely to
123 support a single authentication process that can be used to access multiple applications. This is referred
124 to as single sign-on, or SSO.

125 1.1.2 Improving Authentication Assurance

126 Single-factor password authentication mechanisms for mobile native and web applications may not
127 provide sufficient protection for control of access to law enforcement–sensitive (LES), protected health
128 information (PHI), or personally identifiable information (PII). Replacement of passwords by multifactor
129 technology (e.g., a PIN, plus some physical token or biometric) is widely recognized as necessary for
130 access to sensitive information. Technology for these capabilities exists, but budgetary, contractual, and
131 operational considerations have impeded the implementation and use of these technologies. PSOs need
132 a solution that supports differing authenticator requirements across the community (e.g., law
133 enforcement, fire response, emergency medical services) and a “future proof” solution allowing for the
134 adoption of evolving technologies that may better support PSFRs in the line of duty.

135 1.1.3 Federating Identities and User Account Management

136 PSFRs need access to a variety of applications and databases to support routine activities and
137 emergency situations. These resources may be accessed by portable mobile devices or mobile data
138 terminals in vehicles. It is not uncommon for these resources to reside within neighboring jurisdictions
139 at the federal, state, county, or local level. Even when the information is within the same jurisdiction, it
140 may reside in a third-party vendor’s cloud service. This environment results in the issuance of many user
141 accounts to each PSFR that are managed and updated by those neighboring jurisdictions or cloud service

142 providers. When a PSFR leaves or changes job functions, the home organization must ensure that
143 accounts are deactivated, avoiding any orphaned accounts managed by third parties. PSOs need a
144 solution that reduces the number of accounts managed and allows user account and credentials issued
145 by a PSFR's home organization to access information across jurisdictions and with cloud services. The
146 ability of one organization to accept the identity and credentials from another organization, in the form
147 of an identity assertion, is called identity federation. Current commercially available standards support
148 this functionality.

149 1.2 Solution

150 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates how commercially available technologies,
151 standards, and best practices implementing SSO, identity federation, and MFA can meet the needs of
152 PSFR communities when accessing services from mobile devices.

153 In our lab at the NCCoE, we built an environment that simulates common identity providers (IdPs) and
154 software applications found in PSFR infrastructure. In this guide, we show how a PSFR entity can
155 leverage this infrastructure to implement SSO, identity federation, and MFA for native and web
156 applications on mobile platforms. SSO, federation, and MFA capabilities can be implemented
157 independently, but implementing them together would achieve maximum improvement with respect to
158 usability, interoperability, and security.

159 At its core, the architecture described in [Section 4](#) implements the Internet Engineering Task Force's
160 (IETF's) Best Current Practice (BCP) guidance found in Request for Comments (RFC) 8252, *OAuth 2.0 for*
161 *Native Apps* [1]. Leveraging technology newly available in modern mobile operating systems (OSs), RFC
162 8252 defines a specific flow allowing for authentication to mobile native applications without exposing
163 user credentials to the client application. This authentication can be leveraged by additional mobile
164 native and web applications to provide an SSO experience, avoiding the need for the user to manage
165 credentials independently for each application. Using the Fast Identity Online (FIDO) universal
166 authentication framework (UAF) [2] and universal second factor (U2F) [3] protocols, this solution
167 supports MFA on mobile platforms that use a diverse set of authenticators. The use of security assertion
168 markup language (SAML) 2.0 [4] and OpenID Connect (OIDC) 1.0 [5] federation protocols allows PSOs to
169 share identity assertions between applications and across PSO jurisdictions. Using this architecture
170 allows PSFR personnel to authenticate once—say, at the beginning of their shift—and then leverage that
171 single authentication to gain access to many other mobile native and web applications while on duty,
172 reducing the time needed for authentication.

173 The PSFR community comprises tens of thousands of different organizations across the United States,
174 many of which may operate their own IdPs. Today, most IdPs use SAML 2.0, but OIDC is rapidly gaining
175 market share as an alternative for identity federation. As this build architecture demonstrates, an Open
176 Authorization (OAuth) Authorization Server (AS) can integrate with both OIDC and SAML IdPs.

177 The guide provides:

- 178 ▪ a detailed example solution and capabilities that may be implemented independently or in
179 combination to address risk and security controls
- 180 ▪ a demonstration of the approach using multiple, commercially available products
- 181 ▪ how-to instructions for implementers and security engineers on integrating and configuring the
182 example solution into their organization's enterprise in a manner that achieves security goals
183 with minimum impact on operational efficiency and expense

184 Commercial, standards-based products, such as the ones that we used, are readily available and
185 interoperable with existing IT infrastructure and investments.

186 This guide lists all of the necessary components and provides installation, configuration, and integration
187 information so that a PSFR entity can replicate what we have built. The NCCoE does not particularly
188 endorse the suite of commercial products used in our reference design. These products were used after
189 an open call in the Federal Register to participate. Each organization's security experts should identify
190 the standards-based products that will best integrate with its existing tools and IT system infrastructure.
191 Organizations can adopt this solution or a different one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or an
192 organization can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing parts of a solution.

193 **1.3 Benefits**

194 The NCCoE, in collaboration with our stakeholders in the PSFR community, identified the need for a
195 mobile SSO and MFA solution for native and web applications. This NCCoE practice guide, *Mobile*
196 *Application Single Sign-On*, can help PSOs:

- 197 ▪ define requirements for mobile application SSO and MFA implementation
- 198 ▪ improve interoperability between mobile platforms, applications, and IdPs, regardless of the
199 application development platform used in their construction
- 200 ▪ enhance the efficiency of PSFRs by reducing the number of authentication steps, the time
201 needed to get access to critical data, and the number of credentials that need to be managed
- 202 ▪ support a diverse set of credentials, enabling PSOs to choose an authentication solution that
203 best meets their individual needs
- 204 ▪ enable cross-jurisdictional information sharing by identity federation

205 **2 How to Use This Guide**

206 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a standards-based reference design and provides
207 users with the information they need to replicate an MFA and mobile SSO solution for mobile native and
208 web applications. This reference design is modular and can be deployed in whole or in parts.

209 This guide contains three volumes:

- 210 ▪ NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-13A: *Executive Summary*
- 211 ▪ NIST SP 1800-13B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics—what we built and why*
212 **(you are here)**
- 213 ▪ NIST SP 1800-13C: *How-To Guides*—instructions for building the example solution

214 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

215 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers**, will be interested in the
216 *Executive Summary (NIST SP 1800-13A)*, which describes the:

- 217 ▪ challenges that enterprises face in MFA and mobile SSO for native and web applications
- 218 ▪ example solution built at the NCCoE
- 219 ▪ benefits of adopting the example solution

220 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,
221 and mitigate risk will be interested in this part of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-13B*, which describes what we
222 did and why. The following sections will be of particular interest:

- 223 ▪ [Section 3.5](#), Risk Assessment, provides a description of the risk analysis we performed
- 224 ▪ [Appendix A](#), Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core, maps the security characteristics of this
225 example solution to cybersecurity standards and best practices

226 You might share the *Executive Summary, NIST SP 1800-13A*, with your leadership team members to help
227 them understand the importance of adopting a standards-based MFA and mobile SSO solution for native
228 and web applications.

229 **IT professionals** who want to implement an approach like this will find the whole practice guide useful.
230 You can use the How-To portion of the guide, *NIST SP 1800-13C*, to replicate all or parts of the build
231 created in our lab. The How-To guide provides specific product installation, configuration, and
232 integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not recreate the product
233 manufacturer’s documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we
234 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

235 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the
236 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial products to address this challenge, this guide does
237 not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this solution or one that adheres to
238 these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point for tailoring and implementing
239 SSO or MFA separately. Your organization’s security experts should identify the products that will best
240 integrate with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope you will seek products that are

241 congruent with applicable standards and best practices. [Section 3.7](#) lists the products we used and maps
242 them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this reference solution.

243 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe “the” solution, but a possible solution. This is a
244 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and
245 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to [psfr-](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov)
246 [nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:psfr-nccoe@nist.gov).

247 2.1 Typographical Conventions

248 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	filenames and pathnames references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons and fields	Choose File > Edit .
Monospace	command-line input, on-screen computer output, sample code examples, status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<code>service sshd start</code>
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST’s National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence are available at http://nccoe.nist.gov

249 3 Approach

250 In conjunction with the PSFR community, the NCCoE developed a project description identifying MFA
251 and SSO for mobile native and web applications as a critical need for PSFR organizations. The NCCoE

252 then engaged subject matter experts from industry organizations, technology vendors, and standards
253 bodies to develop an architecture and reference design leveraging new capabilities in modern mobile
254 OSs and best current practices in SSO and MFA.

255 3.1 Audience

256 This guide is intended for individuals or entities who are interested in understanding the mobile native
257 and web application SSO and MFA reference designs that the NCCoE has implemented to allow PSFR
258 personnel to securely and efficiently gain access to mission-critical data by using mobile devices. Though
259 the NCCoE developed this reference design with the PSFR community, any party interested in SSO and
260 MFA for native mobile and web applications can leverage the architecture and design principles
261 implemented in this guide.

262 The overall build architecture addresses three different audiences with somewhat separate concerns:

- 263 ▪ IdPs – PSFR organizations that issue and maintain user accounts for their users. Larger PSFR
264 organizations may operate their own IdP infrastructures and may federate using SAML or OIDC
265 services, while others may seek to use an IdP service provider. IdPs are responsible for identity
266 proofing, account creation, account and attribute management, and credential management.
- 267 ▪ Relying parties (RPs) – organizations providing application services to multiple PSFR
268 organizations. RPs may be software-as-a-service (SaaS) providers or PSFR organizations
269 providing shared services consumed by other organizations. The RP operates an OAuth 2.0 AS,
270 which integrates with users’ IdPs and issues access tokens to enable mobile apps to make
271 requests to the back-end application servers.
- 272 ▪ App developers – mobile application developers. Today, mobile client apps are typically
273 developed by the same software provider as the back-end RP applications. However, the OAuth
274 framework enables interoperability between RP applications and third-party client apps. In any
275 case, mobile application development is a specialized skill with unique considerations and
276 requirements. Mobile application developers should consider implementing the AppAuth library
277 for IETF RFC 8252 to enable standards-based SSO.

278 3.2 Scope

279 The focus of this project is to address the need for secure and efficient mobile native and web
280 application SSO. The NCCoE drafted a use case that identified numerous desired solution characteristics.
281 After an open call in the Federal Register for vendors to help develop a solution, we chose participating
282 technology collaborators on a first-come, first-served basis. We scoped the project to produce the
283 following high-level desired outcomes:

- 284 ▪ provide a standards-based solution architecture that selects an effective and secure approach to
285 implementing mobile SSO, leveraging native capabilities of the mobile OS
- 286 ▪ ensure that mobile applications do not have access to user credentials

- 287 ▪ support MFA and multiple authentication protocols
- 288 ▪ support multiple authenticators, considering unique environmental constraints faced by first
- 289 responders in emergency medical services, law enforcement, and fire services
- 290 ▪ support cross-jurisdictional information sharing through the use of identity federation

291 To maintain the project’s focus on core SSO and MFA requirements, the following subjects are out of
292 scope. These technologies and practices are critical to a successful implementation, but they do not
293 directly affect the core design decisions.

- 294 ▪ Identity proofing – The solution will create synthetic digital identities that represent the
- 295 identities and attributes of public safety personnel to test authentication assertions. This
- 296 includes the usage of a lab-configured identity repository—not a genuine repository and schema
- 297 provided by any PSO. This guide will not demonstrate an identity proofing process.
- 298 ▪ Access control – This solution will support the creation and federation of attributes, but will not
- 299 discuss or demonstrate access control policies that an RP might implement to govern access to
- 300 specific resources.
- 301 ▪ Credential storage – This solution will be agnostic to where credentials are stored on the mobile
- 302 device. For example, this use case is not affected by storing a certificate in software versus
- 303 hardware, such as a trusted platform module (TPM).
- 304 ▪ Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) – The solution will assume that all applications
- 305 involved in the SSO experience are allowable via an EMM. This implementation may be
- 306 supported by using an EMM (for example, to automatically provision required mobile apps to
- 307 the device), but it does not strictly depend on using an EMM.
- 308 ▪ Fallback authentication mechanisms – This solution involves the use of multifactor
- 309 authenticators, which may consist of physical authentication devices or cryptographic keys
- 310 stored directly on mobile devices. Situations may arise where a user’s authenticator or device
- 311 has been lost or stolen. This practice guide recommends registering multiple authenticators for
- 312 each user as a partial mitigation, but, in some cases, it may be necessary to either enable users
- 313 to fall back to single-factor authentication or provide other alternatives. Such fallback
- 314 mechanisms must be evaluated considering the organization’s security and availability
- 315 requirements.

316 3.3 Assumptions

317 Before implementing the capabilities described in this practice guide, organizations should review the
318 assumptions underlying the NCCoE build. These assumptions are detailed in [Appendix B](#). Though not in
319 scope for this effort, implementers should consider whether the same assumptions can be made based
320 on current policy, process, and IT infrastructure. As detailed in [Appendix B](#), applicable and appropriate
321 guidance is provided to assist this process for the following functions:

- 322 ▪ identity proofing

- 323 ▪ mobile device security
- 324 ▪ mobile application security
- 325 ▪ EMM
- 326 ▪ FIDO enrollment process

327 **3.4 Business Case**

328 Any decision to implement IT systems within an organization must begin with a solid business case. This
329 business case could be an independent initiative or a component of the organization’s strategic planning
330 cycle. Individual business units or functional areas typically derive functional or business unit strategies
331 from the overall organization’s strategic plan. The business drivers for any IT project must originate in
332 these strategic plans, and the decision to determine if an organization will invest in mobile SSO, identity
333 federation, or MFA by implementing the solution in this practice guide will be based on the
334 organization’s decision-making process for initiating new projects.

335 An important set of inputs to the business case are the risks to the organization from mobile
336 authentication and identity management, as outlined in Section 3.5. Apart from addressing
337 cybersecurity risks, SSO also improves the user experience and alleviates the overhead associated with
338 maintaining and using passwords for multiple applications. This provides a degree of convenience to all
339 types of users, but reducing the authentication overhead for PSFR users, and reducing barriers to getting
340 the information and applications that they need, could have a tremendous effect. First responder
341 organizations and application providers also benefit by using interoperable standards that provide easy
342 integration across disparate technology platforms. In addition, the burden of account management is
343 reduced by using a single user account managed by the organization to access multiple applications and
344 services.

345 **3.5 Risk Assessment**

346 NIST SP 800-30 [6], *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, states, “Risk is the net negative impact of the
347 exercise of a vulnerability, considering both the probability and the impact of occurrence. Risk
348 management is the process of identifying risk, assessing risk, and taking steps to reduce risk to an
349 acceptable level.” The NCCoE recommends that any discussion of risk management, particularly at the
350 enterprise level, begins with a comprehensive review of NIST 800-37, *Guide for Applying the Risk
351 Management Framework to Federal Information Systems* [7], material that is available to the public. The
352 risk management framework guidance as a whole proved invaluable in giving us a baseline to assess
353 risks, from which we developed the project, the security characteristics of the build, and this guide.

354 3.5.1 PSFR Risks

355 As PSFR communities adopt mobile platforms and applications, organizations should consider potential
356 risks that these new devices and ecosystems introduce that may negatively affect PSFR organizations
357 and the ability of PSFR personnel to operate. These risks include, but are not limited to, the following
358 risks:

- 359 ▪ The reliance on passwords alone by many PSFR entities has the effect of expanding the scope of
360 a single application/database compromise when users fall back to reusing a small set of easily
361 remembered passwords across multiple applications.
- 362 ▪ Complex passwords are harder to remember and input into IT systems. Mobile devices
363 exacerbate this issue with small screens, touchscreens that may not work with gloves or other
364 PSFR equipment, and three separate keyboards among which the user must switch. In an
365 emergency response, any delay in accessing information may prove critical to containing a
366 situation.
- 367 ▪ Social engineering, man-in-the-middle attacks, replay attacks, and phishing all present real
368 threats to password-based authentication systems.
- 369 ▪ Deterministic, cryptographic authentication mechanisms have security benefits, yet come with
370 the challenge of cryptographic key management. Loss or misuse of cryptographic keys could
371 undermine an authentication system, leading to unauthorized access or data leakage.
- 372 ▪ Biometric authentication mechanisms may be optimal for some PSFR personnel, yet
373 organizations need to ensure that PII, such as fingerprint templates, is protected.
- 374 ▪ Credentials exposed to mobile apps could be stolen by malicious apps or misused by non-
375 malicious apps. Previously, it was common for native apps to use embedded user agents
376 (commonly implemented with web views) for OAuth requests. That approach has many
377 drawbacks, including the host app being able to copy user credentials and cookies, as well as the
378 user needing to authenticate again in each app.

379 3.5.2 Mobile Ecosystem Threats

380 Any discussion of risks and vulnerabilities is incomplete without considering the threats that are
381 involved. NIST SP 800-150, *Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing* [8], states:

382 *A cyber threat is “any circumstance or event with the potential to adversely impact*
383 *organizational operations (including mission, functions, image, or reputation), organizational*
384 *assets, individuals, other organizations, or the Nation through an information system via*
385 *unauthorized access, destruction, disclosure, or modification of information, and/or denial of*
386 *service.”*

387 To simplify this concept, a *threat* is anything that can exploit a vulnerability to damage an asset. Finding
388 the intersection of these three will yield a *risk*. Understanding the applicable threats to a system is the
389 first step to determining its risks.

390 However, identifying and delving into mobile threats is not the primary goal of this practice guide.
391 Instead, we rely on prior work from NIST's [Mobile Threat Catalogue](#) (MTC), along with its associated
392 NIST Interagency Report (NISTIR) 8144, *Assessing Threats to Mobile Devices & Infrastructure* [9]. Each
393 entry in the MTC contains several pieces of information: an identifier, a category, a high-level
394 description, details on its origin, exploit examples, examples of common vulnerabilities and exposures
395 (CVE), possible countermeasures, and academic references. For the purposes of this practice guide, we
396 are primarily interested in threat identifiers, categories, descriptions, and countermeasures.

397 In broad strokes, the MTC covers 32 threat categories that are grouped into 12 distinct classes, as shown
398 in Table 3-1. Of these categories, three in particular, highlighted in green in the table, are covered by the
399 guidance in this practice guide. If implemented correctly, this guidance will help mitigate those threats.

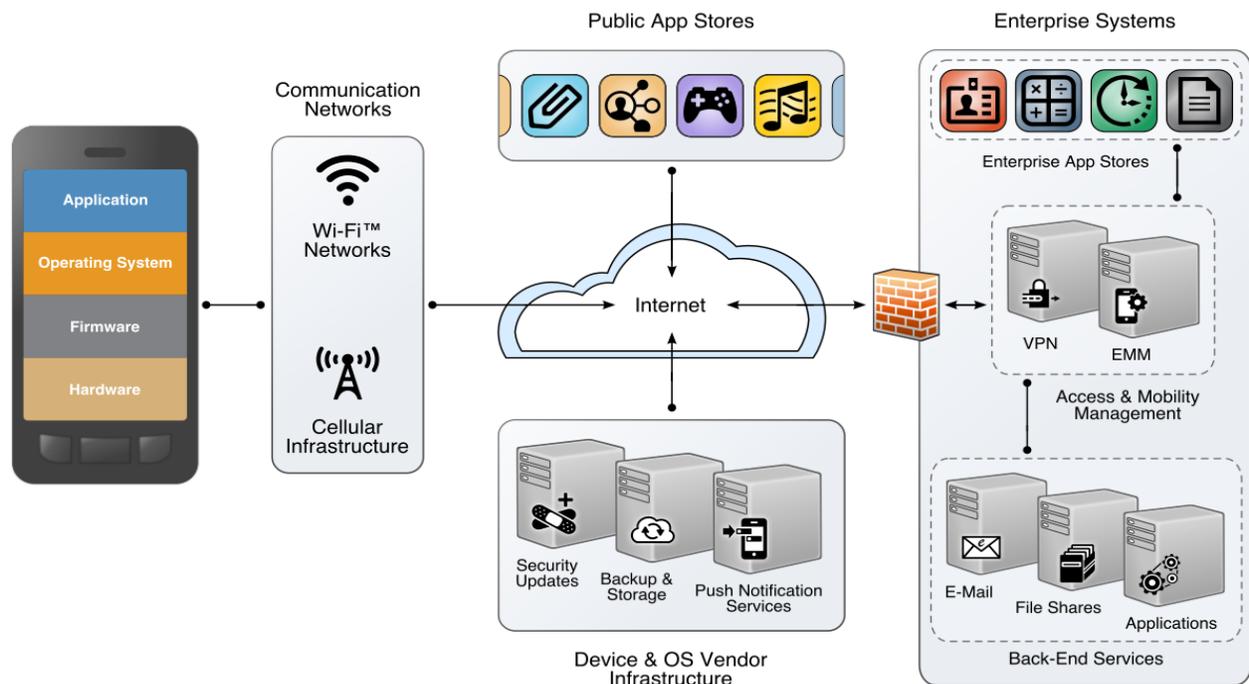
400 Table 3-1 Threat Classes and Categories

Threat Class	Threat Category	Threat Class	Threat Category
Application	Malicious or Privacy-Invasive Application	Local Area Network (LAN) and Personal Area Network (PAN)	Network Threats: Bluetooth
	Vulnerable Applications		Network Threats: Near Field Communication (NFC)
Authentication	Authentication: User or Device to Network		Network Threats: Wi-Fi
	Authentication: User or Device to Remote Service	Payment	Application-Based
	Authentication: User to Device		In-App Purchases
Cellular	Carrier Infrastructure		NFC-Based
	Carrier Interoperability	Physical Access	Physical Access
	Cellular Air Interface	Privacy	Behavior Tracking
	Consumer-Grade Femtocell	Supply Chain	Supply Chain
	SMS / MMS / RCS	Stack	Baseband Subsystem
	USSD		Boot Firmware
	VoLTE		Device Drivers
Ecosystem	Mobile Application Store		Isolated Execution Environments
	Mobile OS & Vendor Infrastructure	Mobile OS	

Threat Class	Threat Category	Threat Class	Threat Category
EMM	Enterprise Mobility Management		SD Card
Global Positioning System (GPS)	GPS		USIM / SIM / UICC Security

401 The other categories, while still important elements of the mobile ecosystem and critical to the health of
 402 an overall mobility architecture, are out of scope for this document. The entire mobile ecosystem should
 403 be considered when analyzing threats to the architecture; this ecosystem is depicted in Figure 3-1, taken
 404 from NISTIR 8144. Each player in the ecosystem—the mobile device user, the enterprise, the network
 405 operator, the app developer, and the original equipment manufacturer (OEM)—can find suggestions to
 406 deter other threats by reviewing the MTC and NISTIR 8144. Many of these share common solutions,
 407 such as using EMM software to monitor device health, and installing apps only from authorized sources.

408 **Figure 3-1 The Mobile Ecosystem**



409

410 3.5.3 Authentication and Federation Threats

411 The MTC is a useful reference from the perspective of mobile devices, applications, and networks. In the
412 context of mobile SSO, specific threats to authentication and federation systems must also be
413 considered. Table 8-1 in NIST SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#) lists several categories of threats against authenticators:

- 414 ▪ theft—stealing a physical authenticator, such as a smart card or U2F device
- 415 ▪ duplication—unauthorized copying of an authenticator, such as a password or private key
- 416 ▪ eavesdropping—interception of an authenticator secret when in use
- 417 ▪ offline cracking—attacks on authenticators that do not require interactive authentication
418 attempts, such as brute-force attacks on passwords used to protect cryptographic keys
- 419 ▪ side channel attack—exposure of an authentication secret through observation of the
420 authenticator’s physical characteristics
- 421 ▪ phishing or pharming—capturing authenticator output through impersonation of the RP or IdP
- 422 ▪ social engineering—using a pretext to convince the user to subvert the authentication process
- 423 ▪ online guessing—attempting to guess passwords through repeated online authentication
424 attempts with the RP or IdP
- 425 ▪ endpoint compromise—malicious code on the user’s device, which is stealing authenticator
426 secrets, redirecting authentication attempts to unintended RPs, or otherwise subverting the
427 authentication process
- 428 ▪ unauthorized binding—binding an attacker-controlled authenticator with the user’s account by
429 intercepting the authenticator during provisioning or impersonating the user in the enrollment
430 process

431 These threats undermine the basic assumption that use of an authenticator in an authentication
432 protocol demonstrates that the user initiating the protocol is the individual referenced by the claimed
433 user identifier. Mitigating these threats is the primary design goal of MFA, and the FIDO specifications
434 address many of these threats.

435 An additional set of threats concerns federation protocols. Authentication threats affect the process of
436 direct authentication of the user to the RP or IdP, whereas federation threats affect the assurance that
437 the IdP can deliver assertions that are genuine and unaltered, only to the intended RP. Table 8-1 in NIST
438 SP 800-63C [\[11\]](#) lists the following federation threats:

- 439 ▪ assertion manufacture or modification—generation of a false assertion or unauthorized
440 modification of a valid assertion
- 441 ▪ assertion disclosure—disclosure of sensitive information contained in an assertion to an
442 unauthorized third party
- 443 ▪ assertion repudiation by the IdP—IdP denies having authenticated a user after the fact

- 444 ▪ assertion repudiation by the subscriber—subscriber denies having authenticated and performed
445 actions on the system
- 446 ▪ assertion redirect—subversion of the federation protocol flow to enable an attacker to obtain
447 the assertion or to redirect it to an unintended RP
- 448 ▪ assertion reuse—attacker obtains a previously used assertion to establish his own session with
449 the RP
- 450 ▪ assertion substitution—attacker substitutes an assertion for a different user in the federation
451 flow, leading to session hijacking or fixation

452 Federation protocols are complex and require interaction among multiple systems, typically under
453 different management. Implementers should carefully apply best security practices relevant to the
454 federation protocols in use. Most federation protocols can incorporate security measures to address
455 these threats, but this may require specific configuration and enabling optional features.

456 3.6 Systems Engineering

457 Some organizations use a systems engineering–based approach to plan and implement their IT projects.
458 Organizations wishing to implement IT systems should conduct robust requirements development,
459 taking into consideration the operational needs of each system stakeholder. Standards such as
460 International Organization for Standardization (ISO) / International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)
461 15288:2015, *Systems and software engineering—System life cycle processes* [12], and NIST SP 800-160,
462 *Systems Security Engineering: Considerations for a Multidisciplinary Approach in the Engineering of*
463 *Trustworthy Secure Systems* [13], provide guidance for applying security in systems development. With
464 both standards, organizations can choose to adopt only those sections of the standard that are relevant
465 to their development approach, environment, and business context. NIST SP 800-160 recommends a
466 thorough analysis of alternative solution classes accounting for security objectives, considerations,
467 concerns, limitations, and constraints. This advice applies to both new system developments and
468 integration of components into existing systems, the focus of this practice guide. [Section 4.1](#), General
469 Architecture Considerations, may assist organizations with this analysis.

470 3.7 Technologies

471 Table 3-2 lists all technologies used in this project, and provides a mapping among the generic
472 application term, the specific product used, and the NIST Cybersecurity Framework (CSF) subcategory
473 that the product provides. For a mapping of CSF subcategories to security controls, please refer to
474 [Appendix A](#), Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core. Refer to [Table A-1](#) for an explanation of the CSF
475 category and subcategory codes.

476 Table 3-2 Products and Technologies

Component	Specific Product Used	How the Component Functions in the Build	Applicable CSF Subcategories
Federation Server	Ping Federate 8.2	OAuth 2.0 AS OIDC provider SAML 2 IdP	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed
FIDO U2F Server	StrongAuth StrongKey Crypto Engine (SKCE) 2.0	FIDO U2F server	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users
External Authenticator	YubiKey Neo	FIDO U2F token supporting authentication over NFC	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users
FIDO UAF Server	Nok Nok Labs FIDO UAF Server	UAF authenticator enrollment, authentication, and transaction confirmation	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users
Mobile Applications (including SaaS backend)	Motorola Solutions Public Safety Experience (PSX) Cockpit, PSX Messenger, and PSX Mapping 5.2	Provide application programming interfaces (APIs) for mobile client apps to access cloud-hosted services and data; consume OAuth tokens	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed
SSO Implementing Best Current Practice	AppAuth Software Development Kit (SDK)	Library used by mobile apps, providing an IETF RFC 8252-compliant OAuth 2.0 client implementation; implements authorization requests, Proof Key for Code Exchange (PKCE), and token refresh	PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed

477 **4 Architecture**

478 The NCCoE worked with industry subject matter experts to develop an open, standards-based,
479 commercially available architecture demonstrating three main capabilities:

- 480 ▪ SSO to RP applications using OAuth 2.0 implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth*
481 *2.0 for Native Apps* BCP)
- 482 ▪ Identity federation to RP applications using both SAML 2.0 and OIDC 1.0
- 483 ▪ MFA to mobile native and web applications using FIDO UAF and U2F

484 Though these capabilities are implemented as an integrated solution in this guide, organizational
485 requirements may dictate that only a subset of these capabilities be implemented. The modular
486 approach of this architecture is designed to support such use cases.

487 Additionally, the authors of this document recognize that PSFR organizations will have diverse IT
488 infrastructures, which may include previously purchased authentication, federation, or SSO capabilities,
489 and legacy technology. For this reason, Section 4.1 and [Appendix C](#) outline general considerations that
490 any organization may apply when designing an architecture tailored to organizational needs. [Section 4.2](#)
491 follows with considerations for implementing the architecture specifically developed by the NCCoE for
492 this project.

493 Organizations are encouraged to read [Section 3.2](#), [Section 3.3](#), [Section 3.5](#), and [Appendix B](#) to provide
494 context for this architecture design.

495 **4.1 General Architectural Considerations**

496 The PSFR community is large and diverse, comprising numerous state, local, tribal, and federal
497 organizations with individual missions and jurisdictions. PSFR personnel include police, firefighters,
498 emergency medical technicians, public health officials, and other skilled support personnel. There is no
499 single management or administrative hierarchy spanning the PSFR population. PSFR organizations
500 operate in a variety of environments with different technology requirements and wide variations in IT
501 staffing and budgets.

502 Cooperation and communication among PSFR organizations at multiple levels is crucial to addressing
503 emergencies that span organizational boundaries. Examples include coordination among multiple
504 services within a city (e.g., fire and police services), among different state law enforcement agencies to
505 address interstate crime, and among federal agencies like the Department of Homeland Security (DHS)
506 and its state and local counterparts. This coordination is generally achieved through peer-to-peer
507 interaction and agreement or through federation structures, such as the National Identity Exchange
508 Federation (NIEF). Where interoperability is achieved, it is the result of the cooperation of willing
509 partners, rather than adherence to central mandates.

510 Enabling interoperability across the heterogeneous, decentralized PSFR user base requires a standards-
511 based solution; a proprietary solution might not be uniformly adopted and could not be mandated. The
512 solution must also support identity federation and federated authentication, as user accounts and
513 authenticators are managed by several different organizations. The solution must also accommodate
514 organizations of different sizes, levels of technical capabilities, and budgets. Compatibility with the
515 existing capabilities of fielded identity systems can reduce the barrier to entry for smaller organizations.

516 Emergency response and other specialized work performed by PSFR personnel often require that they
517 wear personal protective equipment, such as gloves, masks, respirators, and helmets. This equipment
518 renders some authentication methods impractical or unusable. Fingerprint scanners cannot be used
519 with gloves, authentication using a mobile device camera to analyze the user's face or iris may be
520 hampered by masks or goggles, and entering complex passwords on small virtual keyboards is also
521 impractical for gloved users. In addition, PSFR work often involves urgent and hazardous situations
522 requiring the ability to quickly perform mission activities like driving, firefighting, and administering
523 urgent medical aid. Therefore, the solution must support a variety of authenticators in an interoperable
524 way so that individual user groups can select authenticators suited to their operational constraints.

525 In considering these requirements, the NCCoE implemented a standards-based architecture and
526 reference design. Section 4.1.1 through [Section 4.1.3](#) detail the primary standards used, while
527 [Appendix C](#) goes into great depth on architectural consideration when implementing these standards.

528 4.1.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source Libraries

529 SSO enables a user to authenticate once and to subsequently access different applications without
530 having to authenticate again. SSO on mobile devices is complicated by the sandboxed architecture,
531 which makes it difficult to share the session state with back-end systems between individual apps. EMM
532 vendors have provided solutions through proprietary SDKs, but this approach requires integrating the
533 SDK with each individual app and does not scale to a large and diverse population, such as the PSFR user
534 community.

535 OAuth 2.0 is an IETF standard that has been widely adopted to provide delegated authorization of
536 clients accessing representational state transfer (REST) interfaces, including mobile applications.
537 OAuth 2.0, when implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps* BCP),
538 provides a standards-based SSO pattern for mobile apps. The OpenID Foundation's AppAuth libraries
539 [\[14\]](#) can facilitate building mobile apps in full compliance with IETF RFC 8252, but any mobile app that
540 follows RFC 8252's core recommendation of using a shared external user-agent for the OAuth
541 authorization flow will have the benefit of SSO. OAuth considerations and recommendations are
542 detailed in [Section C.1](#) of [Appendix C](#).

543 4.1.2 Identity Federation

544 SAML 2.0 [4] and OIDC 1.0 [5] are two standards that enable an application to redirect users to an IdP
545 for authentication and to receive an assertion of the user's identity and other optional attributes.
546 Federation is important in a distributed environment like the PSFR community, where user management
547 occurs in numerous local organizations. Federated authentication relieves users of having to create
548 accounts in each application that they need to access, and frees application owners from managing user
549 accounts and credentials. OIDC is a more recent protocol, but many organizations have existing SAML
550 deployments. The architecture supports both standards to facilitate adoption without requiring
551 upgrades or modifications to existing SAML IdPs. Federation considerations and recommendations are
552 detailed in [Section C.2](#) of [Appendix C](#).

553 4.1.3 FIDO and Authenticator Types

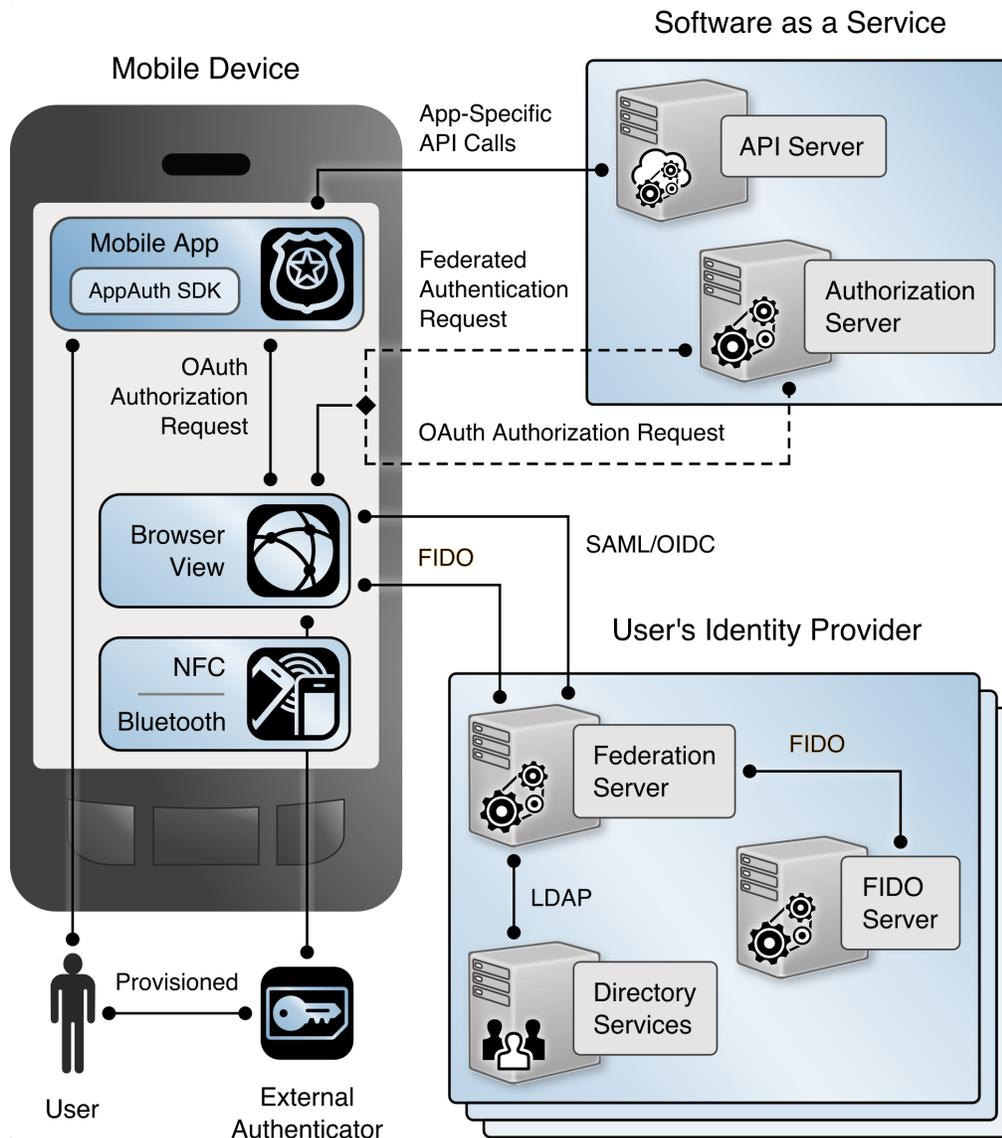
554 When considering MFA implementations, PSFR organizations should carefully consider organizationally
555 defined authenticator requirements. These requirements are detailed in [Section C.3](#) of [Appendix C](#).

556 FIDO provides a standard framework within which vendors have produced a wide range of interoperable
557 biometric, hardware, and software authenticators. This will enable PSFR organizations to choose
558 authenticators suitable to their operational constraints. The FIDO Alliance has published specifications
559 for two types of authenticators based on UAF and U2F. These protocols operate agnostic of the FIDO
560 authenticator, allowing PSOs to choose any FIDO-certified authenticator that meets operational
561 requirements and to implement it with this solution. The protocols, FIDO key registration, FIDO
562 authenticator attestation, and FIDO deployment considerations are also detailed in [Section C.3](#) of
563 [Appendix C](#).

564 4.2 High-Level Architecture

565 The NCCoE implemented both FIDO UAF and U2F for this project. The high-level architecture varies
566 somewhat between the two implementations. Figure 4-1 depicts the interactions between the key
567 elements of the build architecture with the U2F implementation.

568 Figure 4-1 High-Level U2F Architecture

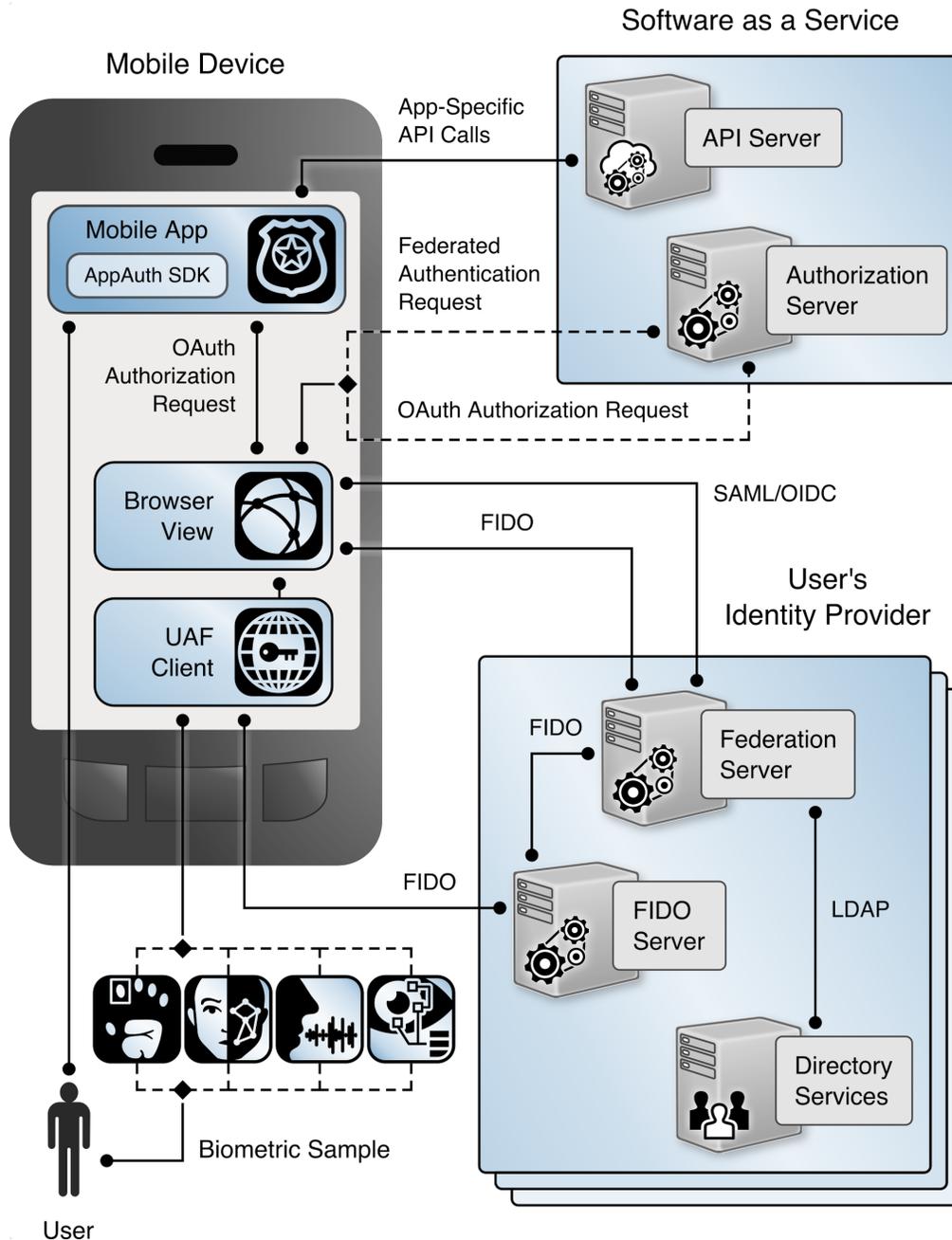


569

570 On the mobile device, the mobile app includes the OpenID Foundation's AppAuth library, which
 571 streamlines implementation of the OAuth client functionality in accordance with the IETF RFC 8252,
 572 *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps*, guidance. AppAuth orchestrates the authorization request flow by using the
 573 device's native browser capabilities, including the use of in-app browser tabs on devices that support
 574 them. The mobile device also supports the two FIDO authentication schemes, UAF and U2F. UAF
 575 typically involves an internal (on-device) authenticator that authenticates the user directly to the device
 576 by using biometrics, other hardware capabilities, or a software client. U2F typically involves an external
 577 hardware authenticator token, which communicates with the device over NFC or Bluetooth.

578 Figure 4-2 shows the corresponding architecture view with the FIDO UAF components.

579 Figure 4-2 High-Level UAF Architecture



580 User

581 The SaaS provider hosts application servers that provide APIs consumed by mobile apps, as well as an
 582 OAuth AS. The browser on the mobile device connects to the AS to initiate the OAuth authorization code

583 flow. The AS redirects the browser to the user’s organization’s IdP to authenticate the user. Once the
584 user has authenticated, the AS will issue an access token, which is returned to the mobile app through a
585 browser redirect and can be used to authorize requests to the application servers.

586 The user’s IdP includes a federation server that implements SAML or OIDC, directory services containing
587 user accounts and attributes, and a FIDO authentication service that can issue authentication challenges
588 and validate the responses that are returned from FIDO authenticators. The FIDO authentication service
589 may be built into the IdP, but is more commonly provided by a separate server.

590 A SaaS provider may provide multiple apps, which may be protected by the same AS. For example,
591 Motorola Solutions provides both the PSX Mapping and PSX Messaging applications, which are
592 protected by a shared AS. Users may also use services from different SaaS providers, which would have
593 separate ASs. This build architecture can provide SSO between apps hosted by a single SaaS provider, as
594 well as across apps provided by multiple SaaS vendors.

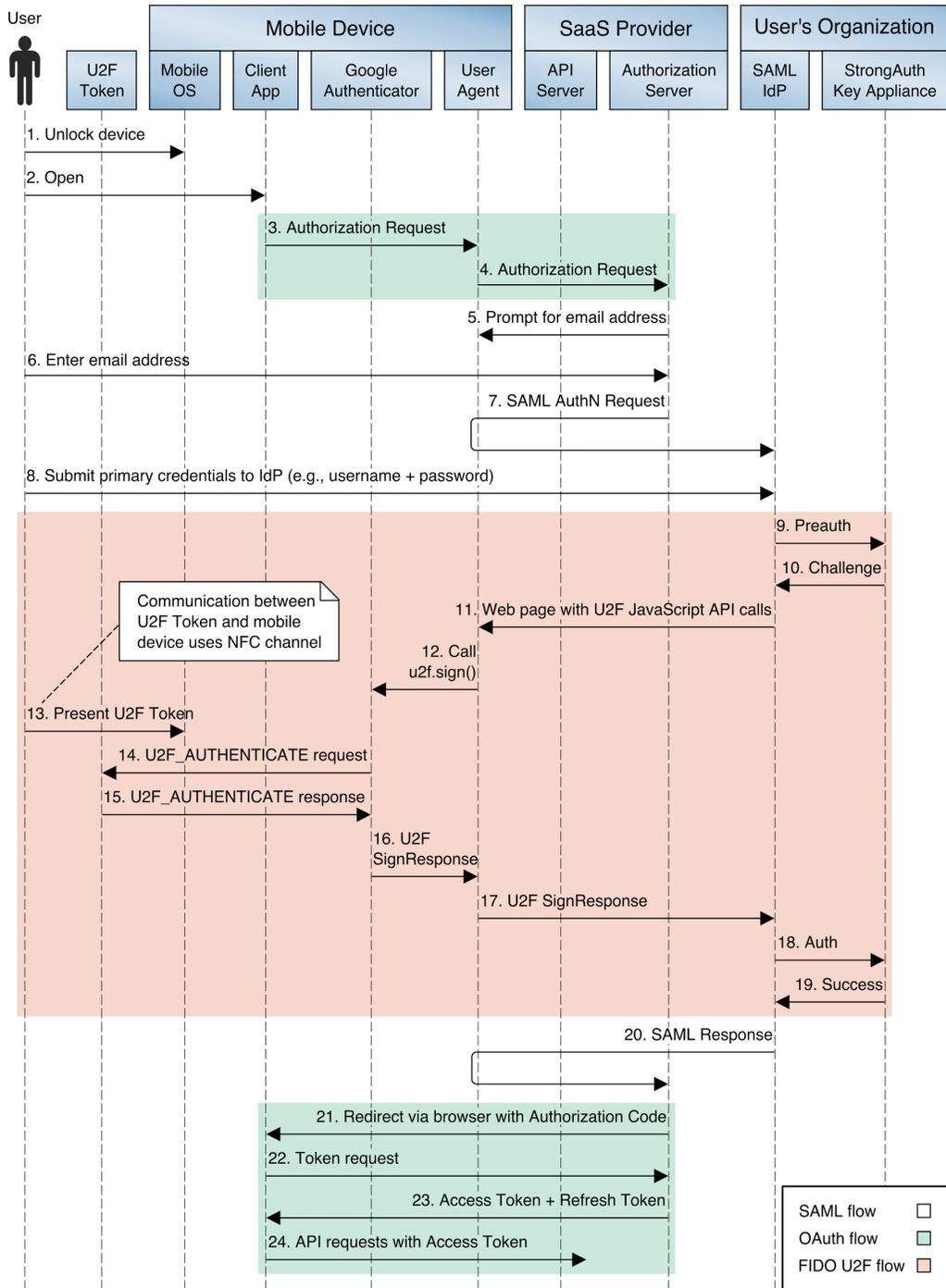
595 **4.3 Detailed Architecture Flow**

596 The mobile SSO lab implementation demonstrates two authentication flows: one in which the user
597 authenticates to a SAML IdP with a YubiKey Neo U2F token and a PIN, and one in which the user
598 authenticates to an OIDC IdP by using UAF with a fingerprint. These pairings of federation and
599 authentication protocols are purely arbitrary; U2F could just as easily be used with OIDC, for example.

600 **4.3.1 SAML and U2F Authentication Flow**

601 The authentication flow using SAML and U2F is depicted in Figure 4-3. This figure depicts the message
602 flows among different components on the mobile device or hosted by the SaaS provider or user
603 organization. In the figure, colored backgrounds differentiate the SAML, OAuth, and FIDO U2F protocol
604 flows. Prior to this authentication flow, the user must have registered a FIDO U2F token with the IdP,
605 and the AS and IdP must have exchanged metadata and established an RP trust.

606 Figure 4-3 SAML and U2F Sequence Diagram



607

608 The detailed steps are as follows:

- 609 1. The user unlocks the mobile device. Any form of lock-screen authentication can be used; it is not
610 directly tied to the subsequent authentication or authorization.
- 611 2. The user opens a mobile app that connects to the SaaS provider's back-end services. The mobile
612 app determines that an OAuth token is needed. This may occur because the app has no access
613 or refresh tokens cached, it has an existing token known to be expired based on token
614 metadata, or it may submit a request to the API server with a cached bearer token and receive
615 an HTTP 401 status code in the response.
- 616 3. The mobile app initiates an OAuth authorization request using the authorization code flow by
617 invoking an in-app browser tab with the Uniform Resource Locator (URL) of the SaaS provider
618 AS's authorization endpoint.
- 619 4. The in-app browser tab submits the request to the AS over an Hypertext Transfer Protocol Se-
620 cure (HTTPS) connection. This begins the OAuth 2 authorization flow.
- 621 5. The AS returns a page that prompts for the user's email address.
- 622 6. The user submits the email address. The AS uses the domain of the email address for IdP discov-
623 ery. The user needs to specify the email address only one time; the address is stored in a cookie
624 in the device browser and will be used to automatically determine the user's IdP on subsequent
625 visits to the AS.
- 626 7. The AS redirects the device browser to the user's IdP with a SAML authentication request. This
627 begins the SAML authentication flow.
- 628 8. The IdP returns a login page. The user submits a username and PIN. The IdP validates these cre-
629 dentials against the directory service. If the credentials are invalid, the IdP redirects back to the
630 login page with an error message and prompts the user to authenticate again. If the credentials
631 are valid, the IdP continues to Step 9.
- 632 9. The IdP submits a "preauth" API request to the StrongAuth SKCE server. The preauth request
633 includes the authenticated username obtained in Step 8. This begins the FIDO U2F authentica-
634 tion process.
- 635 10. The SKCE responds with a U2F challenge that must be signed by the user's registered key in the
636 U2F token to complete authentication. If the user has multiple keys registered, the SKCE returns
637 a challenge for each key so that the user can authenticate with any registered authenticator.

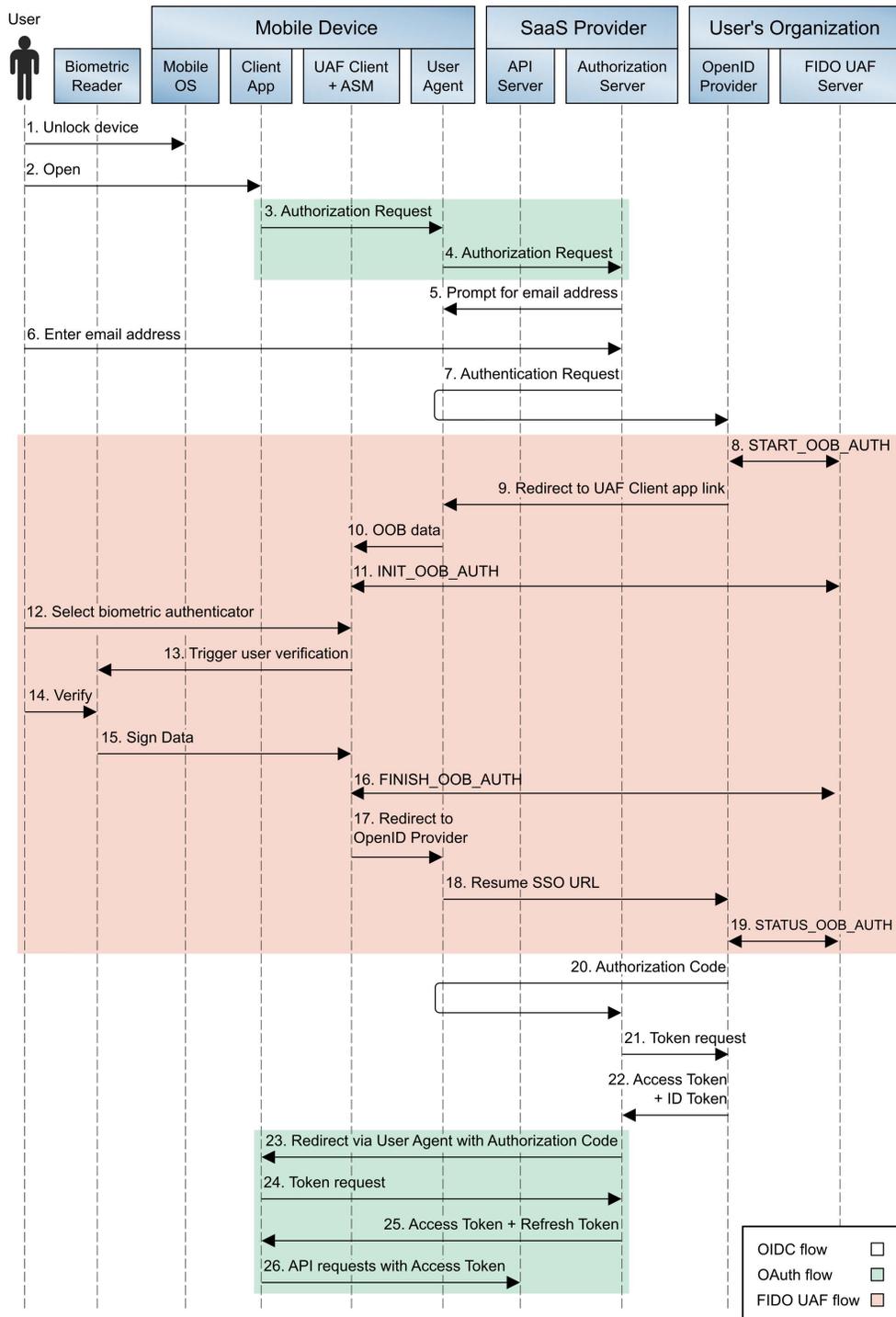
- 638 11. The IdP returns a page to the user's browser that includes Google's JavaScript U2F API and the
639 challenge obtained from the SKCE in Step 10. The user taps a button on the page to initiate U2F
640 authentication, which triggers a call to the `u2f.sign` JavaScript function.
- 641 12. The `u2f.sign` function invokes the Google Authenticator app, passing it the challenge, the `appId`
642 (typically the domain name of the IdP), and an array of the user's registered key.
- 643 13. Google Authenticator prompts the user to hold the U2F token against the NFC radio of the mo-
644 bile device, which the user does.
- 645 14. Google Authenticator connects to the U2F token over the NFC channel and sends an applet se-
646 lection command to activate the U2F applet on the token. Google Authenticator then submits a
647 `U2F_AUTHENTICATE` message to the token.
- 648 15. Provided that the token has one of the keys registered at the IdP, it signs the challenge and re-
649 turns the signature in an authentication success response over the NFC channel.
- 650 16. Google Authenticator returns the signature to the browser in a `SignResponse` object.
- 651 17. The callback script on the authentication web page returns the `SignResponse` object to the IdP.
- 652 18. The IdP calls the "authenticate" API on the SKCE, passing the `SignResponse` as a parameter.
- 653 19. The SKCE validates the signature of the challenge by using the registered public key, and verifies
654 that the `appId` matches the IdP's and that the response was received within the configured time-
655 out. The API returns a response to the IdP, indicating success or failure, and any error messages.
656 This concludes the U2F authentication process; the user has now authenticated to the IdP,
657 which sets a session cookie.
- 658 20. The IdP returns a SAML response indicating the authentication success or failure to the AS
659 through a browser redirect. If authentication has succeeded, the response will include the user's
660 identifier and, optionally, additional attribute assertions. This concludes the SAML authentica-
661 tion flow. The user is now authenticated to the AS, which sets a session cookie. Optionally, the
662 AS could prompt the user to approve the authorization request, displaying the scopes of access
663 being requested at this step.
- 664 21. The AS sends a redirect to the browser with the authorization code. The target of the redirect is
665 the mobile app's `redirect_uri`, a link that opens in the mobile app through a mechanism pro-
666 vided by the mobile OS (e.g., custom request scheme or Android `AppLink`).
- 667 22. The mobile app extracts the authorization code from the URL and submits it to the AS's token
668 endpoint.

- 669 23. The AS responds with an access token, and, optionally, a refresh token that can be used to ob-
670 tain an additional access token when the original token expires. This concludes the OAuth au-
671 thorization flow.
- 672 24. The mobile app can now submit API requests to the SaaS provider's back-end services by using
673 the access token in accordance with the bearer token authorization scheme defined in
674 RFC 6750, *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework: Bearer Token Usage* [\[15\]](#).

675 **4.3.2 OpenID Connect and UAF Authentication Flow**

676 The authentication flow involving OIDC and UAF is depicted in Figure 4-4.

677 **Figure 4-4 OIDC and UAF Sequence Diagram**



678

679 Figure 4-4 uses the same conventions and color coding as the earlier SAML/U2F diagram (Figure 4-3) to
680 depict components on the device, at the SaaS provider and at the user's organization. Prior to this
681 authentication flow, the user must have registered a FIDO UAF authenticator with the IdP, and the AS
682 must be registered as an OIDC client at the IdP. The detailed steps are listed below. For ease of
683 comparison, steps that are identical to the corresponding step in Figure 4-3 are shown in italics.

- 684 1. *The user unlocks the mobile device. Any form of lock-screen authentication can be used; it is not*
685 *directly tied to the subsequent authentication or authorization.*
- 686 2. *The user opens a mobile app that connects to the SaaS provider's back-end services. The mobile*
687 *app determines that an OAuth token is needed. This may occur because the app has no access or*
688 *refresh tokens cached, it has an existing token known to be expired based on token metadata, or*
689 *it may submit a request to the API server with a cached bearer token and receive an HTTP 401*
690 *status code in the response.*
- 691 3. *The mobile app initiates an OAuth authorization request using the authorization code flow by*
692 *invoking an in-app browser tab with the URL of the SaaS provider AS's authorization endpoint.*
- 693 4. *The in-app browser tab submits the request to the AS over an HTTPS connection. This begins the*
694 *OAuth 2 authorization flow.*
- 695 5. *The AS returns a page that prompts for the user's email address.*
- 696 6. *The user submits the email address. The AS uses the domain of the email address for IdP discov-*
697 *ery. The user needs to specify the email address only one time; the address is stored in a cookie*
698 *in the device browser and will be used to automatically determine the user's IdP on subsequent*
699 *visits to the AS.*
- 700 7. The AS redirects the device browser to the user's IdP with an OIDC authentication request. This
701 begins the OIDC authentication flow.
- 702 8. The IdP submits a START_OOB_AUTH request to the UAF authentication server. The server re-
703 sponds with a data structure containing the necessary information for a UAF client to initiate an
704 out-of-band (OOB) authentication, including a transaction identifier linked to the user's session
705 at the IdP.
- 706 9. The IdP returns an HTTP redirect to the in-app browser tab. The redirect target URL is an app
707 link that will pass the OOB data to the Nok Nok Labs Passport application on the device.
- 708 10. The Nok Nok Passport app opens and extracts the OOB data from the app link URL.
- 709 11. Passport sends an INIT_OOB_AUTH request to the UAF authentication server, including the OOB
710 data and a list of authenticators available on the device that the user has registered for use at
711 the IdP. The server responds with a set of UAF challenges for the registered authenticators.

- 712 12. If the user has multiple registered authenticators (e.g., fingerprint and voice authentication),
713 Passport prompts the user to select which authenticator to use.
- 714 13. Passport activates the authenticator, which prompts the user to perform the required steps for
715 verification. For example, if the selected authenticator is the Android Fingerprint authenticator,
716 the standard Android fingerprint user interface (UI) overlay will pop over the browser and
717 prompt the user to scan an enrolled fingerprint. The authenticator UI may be presented by Pass-
718 port (for example, the PIN authenticator), or it may be provided by an OS component.
- 719 14. The user completes the biometric scan or other user verification activity. Verification occurs lo-
720 cally on the device; biometrics and secrets are not transmitted to the server.
- 721 15. The authenticator signs the UAF challenge by using the private key that was created during ini-
722 tial UAF enrollment with the IdP. The authenticator returns control to the Passport application
723 through an app link with the signed UAF challenge.
- 724 16. The Passport app sends a FINISH_OOB_AUTH API request to the UAF authentication server. The
725 server extracts the username and registered public key and validates the signed response. The
726 server can also validate the authenticator's attestation signature and check that the security
727 properties of the authenticator satisfy the IdP's security policy. The server caches the authenti-
728 cation result.
- 729 17. The Passport app closes, returning control to the in-app browser tab, which is redirected to the
730 "resume SSO" URL at the IdP. This URL is defined on the Ping server to enable multistep authen-
731 tication flows and allow the browser to be redirected back to the IdP after completing required
732 authentication steps with another application.
- 733 18. The in-app browser tab requests the Resume SSO URL at the IdP.
- 734 19. The IdP sends a STATUS_OOB_AUTH API request to the UAF authentication server. The UAF
735 server responds with the success/failure status of the out-of-band authentication, and any asso-
736 ciated error messages. (Note: The IdP begins sending STATUS_OOB_AUTH requests periodically,
737 following Step 9 in the flow, and continues to do so until a final status is returned or the transac-
738 tion times out.) This concludes the UAF authentication process; the user has now authenticated
739 to the IdP, which sets a session cookie.
- 740 20. The IdP returns an authorization code to the AS through a browser redirect.
- 741 21. The AS submits a token request to the IdP's token endpoint, authenticating with its credentials
742 and including the authorization code.
- 743 22. The IdP responds with an identification (ID) token and an access token. The ID token includes
744 the user's identifier and, optionally, additional attribute assertions. The access token can option-

745 ally be used to request additional user claims at the IdP's user information endpoint. This con-
746 cludes the OIDC authentication flow. The user is now authenticated to the AS, which sets a ses-
747 sion cookie. Optionally, the AS could prompt for the user to approve the authorization request,
748 displaying the scopes of access being requested at this step.

749 23. *The AS sends a redirect to the browser with the authorization code. The target of the redirect is*
750 *the mobile app's redirect_uri, a link that opens in the mobile app through a mechanism provided*
751 *by the mobile OS (e.g., custom request scheme or Android AppLink).*

752 24. *The mobile app extracts the authorization code from the URL and submits it to the AS's token*
753 *endpoint.*

754 25. *The AS responds with an access token, and, optionally, a refresh token that can be used to obtain*
755 *an additional access token when the original token expires. This concludes the OAuth authoriza-*
756 *tion flow.*

757 26. *The mobile app can now submit API requests to the SaaS provider's back-end services by using*
758 *the access token in accordance with the bearer token authorization scheme.*

759 Both authentication flows end with a single app obtaining an access token to access back-end resources.
760 At this point, traditional OAuth token life cycle management would begin. Access tokens have an
761 expiration time. Depending on the application's security policy, refresh tokens may be issued along with
762 the access token and used to obtain a new access token when the initial token expires. Refresh tokens
763 and access tokens can continue to be issued in this manner for as long as the security policy allows.
764 When the current access token has expired and no additional refresh tokens are available, the mobile
765 app would submit a new authorization request to the AS.

766 Apart from obtaining an access token, the user has established sessions with the AS and IdP that can be
767 used for SSO.

768 **4.4 Single Sign-On with the OAuth Authorization Flow**

769 When multiple apps invoke a common user agent to perform the OAuth authorization flow, the user
770 agent maintains the session state with the AS and IdP. In the build architecture, this can enable SSO in
771 two scenarios.

772 In the first case, assume that a user has launched a mobile application, has been redirected to an IdP to
773 authenticate, and has completed the OAuth flow to obtain an access token. Later, the user launches a
774 second app that connects to the same AS used by the first app. The app will initiate an authorization
775 request, using the same user-agent as the first app. Provided that the user has not logged out at the AS,
776 this request will be sent with the session cookie that was established when the user authenticated in the
777 previous authorization flow. The AS will recognize the user's active session and issue an access token to
778 the second app, without requiring the user to authenticate again.

779 In the second case, again assume that the user has completed an OAuth flow, including authentication
780 to an IdP, while launching the first app. Later, the user launches a second app that connects to a
781 different AS from the first app. Again, the second app initiates an authorization request, using the same
782 user-agent as the first app. The user has no active session with the second AS, so the user-agent is
783 redirected to the IdP to obtain an authentication assertion. Provided that the user has not logged out at
784 the IdP, the authentication request will include the previously established session cookie, and the user
785 will not be required to authenticate again at the IdP. The IdP will return an assertion to the AS, which
786 will then issue an access token to the second app.

787 This architecture can also provide SSO across native and web applications. If the web app is an RP to the
788 same SAML or OIDC IdP used in the authentication flow described above, the app will redirect the
789 browser to the IdP and resume the user's existing session, without the need to reauthenticate, provided
790 that the browser used to access the web app is the same one used in the authorization flow described
791 above. For example, if a Google Chrome Custom Tab is used in the native app OAuth flow, then
792 accessing the web app in Chrome will provide a shared cookie store and SSO. If the web app uses the
793 OAuth 2.0 implicit grant, then SSO could follow either of the above workflows, depending on whether
794 the user is already authenticated at the AS used by the app.

795 When apps use embedded web views, instead of the system browser or in-app tabs for the OAuth
796 authorization flow, each individual app's web view has its own cookie store, so there is no continuity of
797 the session state as the user transitions from one app to another, and the user must authenticate each
798 time.

799 4.5 App Developer Perspective of the Build

800 The following paragraphs provide takeaways from an application developer's perspective regarding the
801 experience of the build team, inclusive of FIDO, the AppAuth library, PKCE, and Chrome Custom Tabs.

802 AppAuth was integrated as described in [Section C.1](#) of [Appendix C](#). From an application developer
803 perspective, the primary emphasis in the build was integrating AppAuth. The authentication technology
804 was basically transparent to the developer. In fact, the native application developers for this project had
805 no visibility to the FIDO U2F or UAF integration. This transparency was achieved through the AppAuth
806 pattern of delegating the authentication process to the in-app browser tab capability of the OS. Other
807 application developer effects are listed below:

- 808 ▪ There are several pieces of information that must be supplied by an application in the OAuth
809 Authorization Request, such as the scope and the client ID, which an OAuth AS might use to
810 apply appropriate authentication policy. These details are obtained during the OAuth client
811 registration process with the AS.
- 812 ▪ The ability to support multiple IdPs, without requiring any hard-coding of IdP URLs in the app
813 itself, was achieved by using Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) forms hosted by the IdP to

814 collect information from end users (e.g., domain) during login, which was used to perform IdP
815 discovery.

816 4.6 Identity Provider Perspective of the Build

817 The IdP is responsible for account and attribute creation and maintenance, as well as credential
818 provisioning, management, and de-provisioning. Some IdP concerns for this architecture are listed
819 below:

- 820 ▪ Enrollment/registration of authenticators. IdPs should consider the enrollment process and life
821 cycle management for MFA. For this NCCoE project, FIDO UAF enrollment was launched by the
822 user via tapping a native enrollment application (Nok Nok Labs' Passport app). During user
823 authentication, the same application (Passport) was invoked programmatically (via AppLink) to
824 perform FIDO authentication. In a production implementation, the IdP would need to put
825 processes in place to enroll, retire, or replace authenticators when needed. A process for
826 responding when authenticators are lost or stolen is particularly important to prevent
827 unauthorized access.
- 828 ▪ For UAF: A FIDO UAF client must be installed (e.g., we installed Nok Nok Labs' NNL Passport).
829 When utilizing AppLink, a script must be written in the IdP adapter to request user permission to
830 follow the AppLink (invoke FIDO UAF client).
- 831 ▪ For U2F: Download and install Google Authenticator (or equivalent) because mobile browsers
832 do not support FIDO U2F 1.1 natively (as do some desktop browsers).

833 4.7 Token and Session Management

834 The RP application owners have two separate areas of concern when it comes to token and session
835 management. They have the authorization tokens to manage on the client side, and the identity
836 tokens/sessions to receive and manage from the IdP side. Each of these functions has its own separate
837 concerns and requirements.

838 When dealing with the native app's access to the RP application data, the RP operators need to make
839 sure that appropriate authorization is in place. The architecture in [Section 4.2](#) uses OAuth 2.0 and
840 authorization tokens for this purpose, following the guidance from IETF RFC 8252. Native app clients
841 present a special challenge, as mentioned earlier, especially when it comes to protecting the
842 authorization code being returned to the client. To mitigate a code interception threat, RFC 8252
843 requires that both clients and servers use PKCE for public native-app clients. ASs should reject
844 authorization requests from native apps that do not use PKCE. The lifetime of the authorization tokens
845 depends on the use case, but the general recommendation from the OAuth working group is to use
846 short-lived access tokens and long-lived refresh tokens. The reauthentication requirements in NIST SP
847 800-63B [\[10\]](#) can be used as guidance for maximum refresh token lifetimes at each authenticator

848 assurance level (AAL). All security considerations from RFC 8252 apply here as well, such as making sure
849 that attackers cannot easily guess any of the token values or credentials.

850 The RP may directly authenticate the user, in which case all of the current best practices for web session
851 security and protecting the channel with Transport Layer Security (TLS) apply. However, if there is
852 delegated or federated authentication via a third-party IdP, then the RP must also consider the
853 implications for managing the identity claims received from the IdP, whether it be an ID token from an
854 OIDC provider or a SAML assertion from a SAML IdP. This channel is used for authentication of the user,
855 which means that potential PII may be obtained. Care must be taken to obtain user consent prior to
856 authorization for the release and use of this information in accordance with relevant regulations. If OIDC
857 is used for authentication to the RP, then all of the OAuth 2.0 security applies again here. In all cases, all
858 channels between parties must be protected with TLS encryption.

859 **5 Security Characteristics Analysis**

860 The purpose of the security characteristic evaluation is to understand the extent to which the project
861 meets its objective of demonstrating MFA and mobile SSO for native and web applications. In addition, it
862 seeks to document the security benefits and drawbacks of the example solution.

863 **5.1 Assumptions and Limitations**

864 This security characteristics analysis is focused on the specific design elements of the build, consisting of
865 MFA, SSO, and federation implementation. It discusses some elements of application development, but
866 only the aspects that directly interact with the SSO implementation. It does not focus on potential
867 underlying vulnerabilities in OSs, application run times, hardware, or general secure coding practices. It
868 is assumed that risks to these foundational components are managed separately (e.g., through asset and
869 patch management). As with any implementation, all layers of the architecture must be appropriately
870 secured, and it is assumed that implementers will adopt standard security and maintenance practices to
871 the elements not specifically addressed here.

872 This project did not include a comprehensive test of all security components or “red team” penetration
873 testing or adversarial emulation. Cybersecurity is a rapidly evolving field where new threats and
874 vulnerabilities are continually discovered. Therefore, this security guidance cannot be guaranteed to
875 identify every potential weakness of the build architecture. It is assumed that implementers will follow
876 risk management procedures as outlined in the NIST Risk Management Framework.

877 5.2 Threat Analysis

878 The following subsections describe how the build architecture addresses the threats discussed in
879 [Section 3.5](#).

880 5.2.1 Mobile Ecosystem Threat Analysis

881 In [Section 3.5.1](#), we introduced the MTC, described the 32 categories of mobile threats that it covers,
882 and highlighted the three categories that this practice guide addresses: [Vulnerable Applications](#),
883 [Authentication: User or Device to Network](#), and [Authentication: User or Device to Remote Service](#).

884 At the time of this writing, these categories encompass 18 entries in the MTC. However, the MTC is a
885 living catalogue, which is continually being updated. Instead of addressing each threat, we describe, in
886 general, how these types of threats are mitigated by the architecture laid out in this practice guide:

- 887 ▪ Use encryption for data in transit: The IdP and AS enforce HTTPS encryption by default, which
888 the app is required to use during SSO authentication.
- 889 ▪ Use newer mobile platforms: Volume C of this guide (*NIST SP 1800-13C*) calls for using at least
890 Android 5.0 or iOS 8.0 or newer, which mitigates weaknesses of older versions (e.g., apps can
891 access the system log in Android 4.0 and older).
- 892 ▪ Use built-in browser features: The AppAuth for Android library utilizes the Chrome Custom Tabs
893 feature, which activates the device's native browser; this allows the app to leverage built-in
894 browser features, such as identifying and avoiding known malicious web pages. Similar
895 functionality exists on iOS devices using the SFSafariViewController and SFAuthenticationSession
896 APIs.
- 897 ▪ Avoid hard-coded secrets: The AppAuth guidance recommends and supports the use of PKCE;
898 this allows developers to avoid using a hard-coded OAuth client secret.
- 899 ▪ Avoid logging sensitive data: The AppAuth library, which handles the OAuth 2 flow, does not log
900 any sensitive data.
- 901 ▪ Use sound authentication practices: By using SSO, the procedures outlined in this guide allow
902 app developers to rely on the IdP's implementation of authentication practices, such as
903 minimum length and complexity requirements for passwords, maximum authentication
904 attempts, and periodic reset requirements; in addition, the IdP can introduce new
905 authenticators without any downstream effect to applications.
- 906 ▪ Use sound token management practices: Again, this guide allows app developers to rely on the
907 IdP's implementation of authorization tokens and good management practices, such as replay-
908 resistance mechanisms and token expirations.
- 909 ▪ Use two-factor authentication: Both FIDO U2F and UAF, as deployed in this build architecture,
910 provide multifactor cryptographic user authentication. The U2F implementation requires the
911 user to authenticate with a password or PIN and with a single-factor cryptographic token,

912 whereas the UAF implementation utilizes a key pair stored in the device’s hardware-backed key
 913 store that is unlocked through user verification consisting of a biometric (e.g., fingerprint or
 914 voice match) or a password or PIN.

915

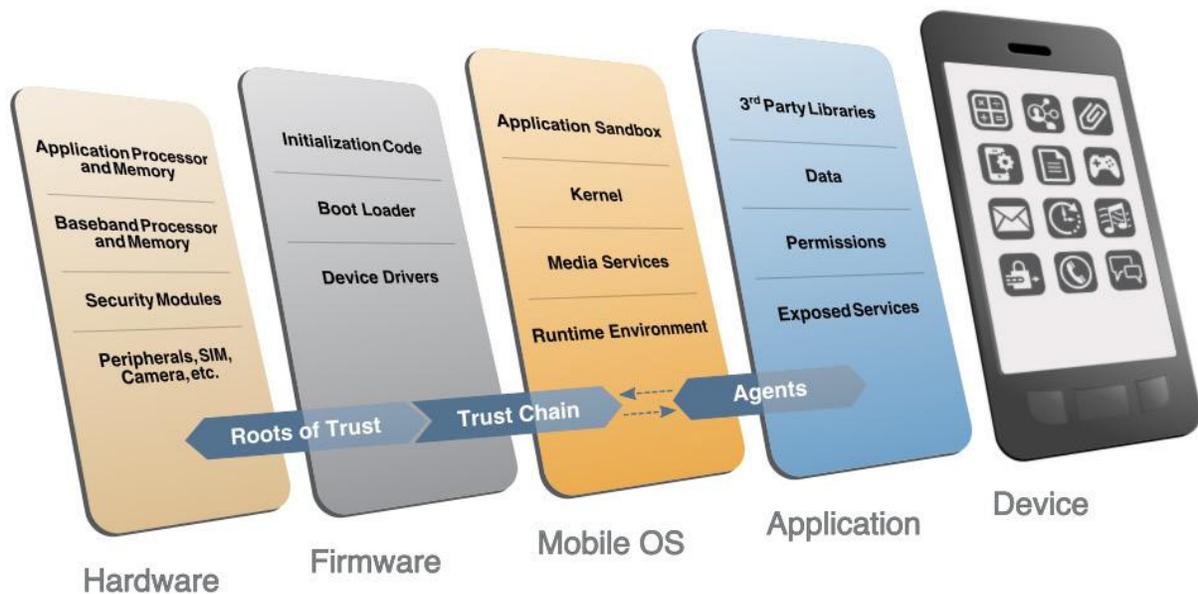
- Protect cryptographic keys: FIDO U2F and UAF authentication leverage public key cryptography.
 916 In this architecture, U2F private keys are stored external to the mobile device in a hardware-
 917 secure element on a YubiKey Neo. UAF private keys are stored on the Android device’s
 918 hardware-backed key store. These private keys are never sent to external servers.

919

- Protect biometric templates: When using biometric authentication mechanisms, organizations
 920 should consider the storage and use of user biometric templates. This architecture relies on the
 921 native biometric mechanisms implemented by modern mobile devices and OSs, which verify
 922 biometrics templates locally and store them in protected storage.

923 To fully address these threats and threats in other MTC categories, additional measures should be taken
 924 by all parties involved in the mobile ecosystem: the mobile device user, the enterprise, the network
 925 operator, the app developer, and the OEM. A figure depicting this ecosystem in total is shown in
 926 [Section 3.5.1](#). In addition, the mobile platform stack should be understood in great detail to fully assess
 927 the threats that may be applicable. An illustration of this stack, taken from NISTIR 8144 [9], is shown in
 928 Figure 5-1.

929 **Figure 5-1 Mobile Device Technology Stack**



930 Several tools, techniques, and best practices are available to mitigate these other threats. EMM
 931 software can allow enterprises to manage devices more fully and to gain a better understanding of
 932 device health; one example of this is detecting whether a device has been *rooted* or *jailbroken*, which
 933

934 compromises the security architecture of the entire platform. Application security-vetting software
935 (commonly known as app-vetting software) can be utilized to detect vulnerabilities in first-party apps
936 and to discover potentially malicious behavior in third-party apps. When used in conjunction with EMM
937 software to limit which apps can be installed on a device, this can greatly lessen the attack surface of the
938 platform. For more guidance on these threats and mitigations, refer to the [MTC](#) and NISTIR 8144 [\[9\]](#).

939 5.2.2 Authentication and Federation Threat Analysis

940 [Section 3.5.3](#) discussed threats specific to authentication and federation systems, which are catalogued
941 in NIST SP 800-63-3 [\[16\]](#). MFA, provided in the build architecture by FIDO U2F and UAF, is designed to
942 mitigate several authentication risks:

- 943 ▪ Theft of physical authenticator – Possessing an authenticator, which could be a YubiKey (in the
944 case of U2F) or the mobile device itself (in the case of UAF), does not, in itself, enable an
945 attacker to impersonate the user to an RP or IdP. Additional knowledge or a biometric factor is
946 needed to authenticate.
- 947 ▪ Eavesdropping – Some MFA solutions, including many one-time password (OTP)
948 implementations, are vulnerable to eavesdropping attacks. FIDO implements cryptographic
949 authentication, which does not involve the transmission of secrets over the network.
- 950 ▪ Social engineering – A typical social engineering exploit involves impersonating a system
951 administrator or other authority figure under some pretext to convince users to disclose their
952 passwords over the phone, but this comprises only a single authentication factor.
- 953 ▪ Online guessing – Traditional password authentication schemes may be vulnerable to online
954 guessing attacks, though lockout and throttling policies can reduce the risk. Cryptographic
955 authentication schemes are not vulnerable to online guessing.

956 FIDO also incorporates protections against phishing and pharming attacks. When a FIDO authenticator is
957 registered with an RP, a new key pair is created and associated with the RP's app ID, which is derived
958 from the domain name in the URL where the registration transaction was initiated. During
959 authentication, the app ID is again derived from the URL of the page that is requesting authentication,
960 and the authenticator will sign the authentication challenge only if a key pair has been registered with
961 the matching app ID. The FIDO facets specification enables sites to define a list of domain names that
962 should be treated as a single app ID, to accommodate service providers that span multiple domain
963 names, such as google.com and gmail.com.

964 The app ID verification effectively prevents the most common type of phishing attack, in which the
965 attacker creates a new domain and tricks users into visiting that domain, instead of an intended RP
966 where the user has an account. For example, an attacker might register a domain called "google-
967 accts.com" and send emails with a pretext to get users to visit the site, such as a warning that the user's
968 account will be disabled unless some action is taken. The attacker's site would present a login screen
969 identical to Google's login screen, to obtain the user's password (and OTP, if enabled) credentials and to

970 use them to impersonate the user to the real Google services. With FIDO, the authenticator would not
971 have an existing key pair registered under the attacker's domain, so the user would be unable to return
972 a signed FIDO challenge to the attacker's site. If the attacker could convince the user to register the FIDO
973 authenticator with the malicious site and then sign an authentication challenge, the signed FIDO
974 assertion could not be used to authenticate to Google, because the RP can also verify the app ID
975 associated with the signed challenge, and it would not be the expected ID.

976 A more advanced credential theft attack involves an active man-in-the-middle who can intercept the
977 user's requests to the legitimate RP and act as a proxy between the two. To avoid TLS server certificate
978 validation errors, in this case, the attacker must obtain a TLS certificate for the legitimate RP site that is
979 trusted by the user's device. This could be accomplished by exploiting a vulnerability in a commercial
980 certificate authority (CA); it presents a high bar for the attacker, but is not unprecedented. App ID
981 validation is not sufficient to prevent this attacker from obtaining an authentication challenge from the
982 RP, proxying it to the user, and using the signed assertion that it gets back from the user to authenticate
983 to the RP. To prevent this type of attack, the FIDO specifications permit the use of token binding to
984 protect the signed assertion that is returned to the RP by including information in the assertion about
985 the TLS channel over which it is being delivered. If there is a man-in-the-middle (or a proxy of any kind)
986 between the user and the RP, the RP can detect it by examining the token binding message included in
987 the assertion and comparing it to the TLS channel over which it was received. Token binding is not
988 universally implemented today, but, as the specification nears final publication, adoption is expected to
989 increase.

990 Many of the federation threats discussed in [Section 3.5.3](#) can be addressed by signing assertions,
991 ensuring their integrity and authenticity. Encrypted assertions can also provide multiple protections,
992 preventing disclosure of sensitive information contained in the assertion, and providing a strong
993 protection against assertion redirection because only the intended RP will have the key required to
994 decrypt the assertion. Most mitigations to federation threats require the application of protocol-specific
995 guidance for SAML and OIDC. These considerations are not specific to the mobile SSO use case; the
996 application of a security-focused profile of these protocols can mitigate many potential issues.

997 In addition to RFC 8252, application developers and RP service providers should consult the *OAuth 2.0*
998 *Threat Model and Security Considerations* documented in RFC 6819 [\[17\]](#) for best practices for
999 implementing OAuth 2.0. The AppAuth library supports a secure OAuth client implementation by
1000 automatically handling details like PKCE. Key protections for OAuth and OIDC include those listed below:

- 1001 ▪ Requiring HTTPS for protocol requests and responses protects access tokens and authorization
1002 codes and authenticates the server to the client.
- 1003 ▪ Using in-app browser tabs for the authentication flow, in conformance with RFC 8252, protects
1004 user credentials from exposure to the mobile client app or the application service provider.

- 1005 ▪ OAuth tokens are associated with access scopes, which can be used to limit the authorizations
1006 granted to any given client app, which somewhat mitigates the potential for misuse of
1007 compromised access tokens.
- 1008 ▪ PKCE, as explained previously, prevents interception of the authorization code by malicious apps
1009 on the mobile device.

1010 5.3 Scenarios and Findings

1011 The overall test scenario involved launching the Motorola Solutions PSX Cockpit mobile app,
1012 authenticating, and then subsequently launching additional PSX apps and validating that the apps could
1013 access the back-end APIs and reflected the identity of the authenticated user. To enable testing of the
1014 two different authentication scenarios, two separate “user organization” infrastructures were created in
1015 the NCCoE lab, and both were registered as IdPs to the test PingFederate instance acting as the PSX AS.
1016 A “domain selector” was created in PingFederate to perform IdP discovery based on the domain of the
1017 user’s email address, enabling the user to trigger authentication at one of the IdPs.

1018 Prior to testing the authentication infrastructure, users had to register U2F and UAF authenticators at
1019 the respective IdPs. FIDO authenticator registration requires a process that provides high assurance that
1020 the authenticator is in the possession of the claimed account holder. In practice, this typically requires a
1021 strongly authenticated session or an in-person registration process overseen by an administrator. In the
1022 lab, a notional enrollment process was implemented with the understanding that real-world processes
1023 would be different and subject to agency security policies. Organizations should refer to NIST SP 800-
1024 63B [\[10\]](#) for specific considerations regarding credential enrollment. From a FIDO perspective, however,
1025 the registration data used would be the same.

1026 Lab testing showed that the build architecture consistently provided SSO between applications. Two
1027 operational findings were uncovered during testing:

- 1028 ▪ Knowing the location of the NFC radio on the mobile device greatly improves the user
1029 experience when authenticating with an NFC token, such as the YubiKey Neo. The team found
1030 that NFC radios are in different locations on different devices; on the Nexus 6P, for example, the
1031 NFC radio is near the top of the device, near the camera, whereas, on the Galaxy S6 Edge, the
1032 NFC radio is slightly below the vertical midpoint of the device. After initial experimentation to
1033 locate the radio, team members could quickly and reliably make a good NFC connection with the
1034 YubiKey by holding it in the correct location. Device manufacturers provide NFC radio location
1035 information via device technical specifications.
- 1036 ▪ Time synchronization between servers is critical. In lab testing, intermittent authentication
1037 errors were found to be caused by clock drift between the IdP and the AS. This manifested as
1038 the AS reporting JavaScript object notation (JSON) Web Token (JWT) validation errors when
1039 attempting to validate ID tokens received from the IdP. All participants in the federation scheme
1040 should synchronize their clocks to a reliable network time protocol (NTP) source, such as the

1041 NIST NTP pools [\[18\]](#). Implementations should allow for a small amount of clock skew—on the
1042 order of a few seconds—to account for the unpredictable latency of network traffic.

1043 **6 Future Build Considerations**

1044 **6.1 Single Logout**

1045 To ensure that only authorized personnel get access to application resources, users must be logged out
1046 from application sessions when access is no longer needed or when a session expires. In an SSO
1047 scenario, a user may need to be logged out from one or many applications at a given time. This scenario
1048 will demonstrate architectures for tearing down user sessions, clearly communicating to the user which
1049 application(s) have active sessions, and ensuring that active sessions are not orphaned.

1050 **6.2 Shared Devices**

1051 This scenario will focus on a situation where two or more colleagues share a single mobile device to
1052 accomplish a mission. The credentials, such as the FIDO UAF and U2F used in this guide, will be included,
1053 but may need to be registered to multiple devices. This scenario will explore situations in which multiple
1054 profiles or no profiles are installed on a device, potentially requiring the user to log out prior to giving
1055 the device to another user.

1056 **6.3 Step-Up Authentication**

1057 A user will access applications by using an acceptable, but low, assurance authenticator. Upon
1058 requesting access to an application that requires higher assurance, the user will be prompted for an
1059 additional authentication factor. Determinations on whether to step up may be based on risk-relevant
1060 data points collected by the IdP at the time of authentication, referred to as the authentication context.

1061 **Appendix A Mapping to Cybersecurity Framework Core**

1062 Table A-1 maps informative National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and consensus
 1063 security references to the Cybersecurity Framework (CSF) Core subcategories that are addressed by NIST
 1064 Special Publication (SP) 1800-13. The references do not include protocol specifications that are
 1065 implemented by the individual products that compose the demonstrated security platforms. While
 1066 some of the references provide general guidance that informs implementation of referenced CSF Core
 1067 Functions, the NIST SP 1800-13 references provide specific recommendations that should be considered
 1068 when composing and configuring security platforms and technologies described in this practice guide.

1069 **Table A-1 CSF Categories**

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
Asset Management (ID.AM): The data, personnel, devices, systems, and facilities that enable the organization to achieve business purposes are identified and managed consistent with their relative importance to business objectives and the organization's risk strategy	ID.AM-1: Physical devices and systems within the organization are inventoried	CCS CSC 1 COBIT 5 BAI09.01, BAI09.02 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.2.3.4 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 7.8 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.8.1.1, A.8.1.2 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 CM-8
Access Control (PR.AC): Access to assets and associated facilities is limited to authorized users, processes, or devices, and to authorized activities and transactions	PR.AC-1: Identities and credentials are managed for authorized devices and users	CCS CSC 16 COBIT 5 DSS05.04, DSS06.03 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.3.3.5.1 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 1.1, SR 1.2, SR 1.3, SR 1.4, SR 1.5, SR 1.7, SR 1.8, SR 1.9 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.9.2.1, A.9.2.2, A.9.2.4, A.9.3.1, A.9.4.2, A.9.4.3 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-2, Information Assurance (IA) Family

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
	<p>PR.AC-3: Remote access is managed</p>	<p>COBIT 5 APO13.01, DSS01.04, DSS05.03 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.3.3.6.6 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 1.13, SR 2.6 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.6.2.2, A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-17, AC-19, AC-20</p>
	<p>PR.AC-4: Access permissions are managed, incorporating the principles of least privilege and separation of duties</p>	<p>CCS CSC 12, 15 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.3.3.7.3 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 2.1 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.6.1.2, A.9.1.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.4.1, A.9.4.4 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-2, AC-3, AC-5, AC-6, AC-16</p>
<p>Data Security (PR.DS): Information and records (data) are managed consistent with the organization’s risk strategy to protect the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of information</p>	<p>PR.DS-5: Protections against data leaks are implemented</p>	<p>CCS CSC 17 COBIT 5 APO01.06 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 5.2 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.6.1.2, A.7.1.1, A.7.1.2, A.7.3.1, A.8.2.2, A.8.2.3, A.9.1.1, A.9.1.2, A.9.2.3, A.9.4.1, A.9.4.4, A.9.4.5, A.13.1.3, A.13.2.1, A.13.2.3, A.13.2.4, A.14.1.2, A.14.1.3 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-4, AC-5, AC-6, PE-19, PS-3, PS-6, SC-7, SC-8, SC-13, SC-31, SI-4</p>

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
<p>Protective Technology (PR.PT): Technical security solutions are managed to ensure the security and resilience of systems and assets, consistent with related policies, procedures, and agreements</p>	<p>PR.PT-1: Audit/log records are determined, documented, implemented, and reviewed in accordance with policy</p>	<p>CCS CSC 14 COBIT 5 APO11.04 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.3.3.3.9, 4.3.3.5.8, 4.3.4.4.7, 4.4.2.1, 4.4.2.2, 4.4.2.4 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 2.8, SR 2.9, SR 2.10, SR 2.11, SR 2.12 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.12.4.1, A.12.4.2, A.12.4.3, A.12.4.4, A.12.7.1 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AU Family</p>
	<p>PR.PT-2: Removable media is protected, and its use restricted according to policy</p>	<p>COBIT 5 DSS05.02, APO13.01 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 2.3 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.8.2.2, A.8.2.3, A.8.3.1, A.8.3.3, A.11.2.9 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 MP-2, MP-4, MP-5, MP-7</p>
	<p>PR.PT-3: Access to systems and assets is controlled, incorporating the principle of least functionality</p>	<p>COBIT 5 DSS05.02 ISA 62443-2-1:2009 4.3.3.5.1, 4.3.3.5.2, 4.3.3.5.3, 4.3.3.5.4, 4.3.3.5.5, 4.3.3.5.6, 4.3.3.5.7, 4.3.3.5.8, 4.3.3.6.1, 4.3.3.6.2, 4.3.3.6.3, 4.3.3.6.4, 4.3.3.6.5, 4.3.3.6.6, 4.3.3.6.7, 4.3.3.6.8, 4.3.3.6.9, 4.3.3.7.1, 4.3.3.7.2, 4.3.3.7.3, 4.3.3.7.4 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 1.1, SR 1.2, SR 1.3, SR 1.4, SR 1.5, SR 1.6, SR 1.7, SR 1.8, SR 1.9, SR 1.10, SR 1.11, SR 1.12, SR 1.13, SR 2.1, SR 2.2, SR 2.3, SR 2.4, SR 2.5, SR 2.6, SR 2.7 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.9.1.2 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-3, CM-7</p>

Category	Subcategory	Informative References
	<p>PR.PT-4: Communications and control networks are protected</p>	<p>CCS CSC 7 COBIT 5 DSS05.02, APO13.01 ISA 62443-3-3:2013 SR 3.1, SR 3.5, SR 3.8, SR 4.1, SR 4.3, SR 5.1, SR 5.2, SR 5.3, SR 7.1, SR 7.6 ISO/IEC 27001:2013 A.13.1.1, A.13.2.1 NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4 AC-4, AC-17, AC-18, CP-8, SC-7</p>

1070

1071 **Appendix B: Assumptions Underlying the Build**

1072 This project is guided by the following assumptions. Implementers are advised to consider whether the
1073 same assumptions can be made based on current policy, process, and information-technology (IT)
1074 infrastructure. Where applicable, appropriate guidance is provided to assist this process as described in
1075 the following subsections.

1076 **B.1 Identity Proofing**

1077 National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Special Publication (SP) 800-63A, *Enrollment and*
1078 *Identity Proofing* [19], addresses how applicants can prove their identities and become enrolled as valid
1079 subjects within an identity system. It provides requirements for processes by which applicants can both
1080 proof and enroll at one of three different levels of risk mitigation, in both remote and physically present
1081 scenarios. NIST SP 800-63A contains both normative and informative material. Organizations should use
1082 NIST SP 800-63A to develop and implement an identity proofing plan within their enterprise.

1083 **B.2 Mobile Device Security**

1084 Mobile devices can add to an organization's productivity by providing employees with access to business
1085 resources at any time. Not only has this reshaped how traditional tasks are accomplished, but
1086 organizations are also devising entirely new ways to work. However, mobile devices may be lost or
1087 stolen. A compromised mobile device may allow remote access to sensitive on-premises organizational
1088 data or any other data that the user has entrusted to the device. Several methods exist to address these
1089 concerns (e.g., using a device lock screen, setting shorter screen timeouts, forcing a device wipe in case
1090 of too many failed authentication attempts). It is up to the organization to implement these types of
1091 security controls, which can be enforced with Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) software (see
1092 [Section B.4](#)).

1093 NIST SP 1800-4, *Mobile Device Security: Cloud & Hybrid Builds* [20], demonstrates how to secure
1094 sensitive enterprise data that is accessed by and/or stored on employees' mobile devices. The NIST
1095 *Mobile Threat Catalogue* [21] identifies threats to mobile devices and associated mobile infrastructure
1096 to support the development and implementation of mobile security capabilities, best practices, and
1097 security solutions to better protect enterprise IT. We strongly encourage organizations implementing
1098 this practice guide in whole or in part to consult these resources when developing and implementing a
1099 mobile device security plan for their own organizations.

1100 **B.3 Mobile Application Security**

1101 The security qualities of an entire platform can be compromised if an application (app) exhibits
1102 vulnerable or malicious behavior. Application security is paramount in ensuring that the security
1103 controls implemented in other architecture components can effectively mitigate threats. The practice of

1104 making sure that an application is secure is known as software assurance (SwA). This is defined as “the
1105 level of confidence that software is free from vulnerabilities, either intentionally designed into the
1106 software or accidentally inserted at any time during its lifecycle, and that the software functions in the
1107 intended manner” [22].

1108 In an architecture that largely relies on third-party—usually closed-source—applications to handle daily
1109 user functions, good SwA hygiene can be difficult to implement. To address this problem, NIST has
1110 released guidance on how to structure and implement an application-vetting process (also known as
1111 “app vetting”) [23]. This takes an organization through the following steps:

- 1112 1. understanding the process for vetting the security of mobile applications
- 1113 2. planning for the implementation of an app-vetting process
- 1114 3. developing app security requirements
- 1115 4. understanding the types of app vulnerabilities and the testing methods used to detect those vul-
1116 nerabilities
- 1117 5. determining whether an app is acceptable for deployment on the organization’s mobile devices

1118 Public safety organizations (PSOs) should carefully consider their application-vetting needs. Though
1119 major mobile application stores, such as Apple’s iTunes Store and Google’s Play Store, have vetting
1120 mechanisms to find vulnerable and malicious applications, organizations may have needs beyond these
1121 proprietary tools. Per NIST SP 800-163, *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications* [23]:

1122 *App stores may perform app vetting processes to verify compliance with their own requirements.*
1123 *However, because each app store has its own unique, and not always transparent, requirements*
1124 *and vetting processes, it is necessary to consult current agreements and documentation for a*
1125 *particular app store to assess its practices. Organizations should not assume that an app has*
1126 *been fully vetted and conforms to their security requirements simply because it is available*
1127 *through an official app store. Third party assessments that carry a moniker of “approved by” or*
1128 *“certified by” without providing details of which tests are performed, what the findings were, or*
1129 *how apps are scored or rated, do not provide a reliable indication of software assurance. These*
1130 *assessments are also unlikely to take organization specific requirements and recommendations*
1131 *into account, such as federal-specific cryptography requirements.*

1132 The First Responder Network Authority (FirstNet) provides an app store specifically geared toward first
1133 responder applications. Through the FirstNet App Developer Program [24], app developers can submit
1134 mobile apps for evaluation against its published development guidelines. The guidelines include
1135 security, scalability, and availability, along with other requirements. Compliant apps can be selected for
1136 inclusion in the FirstNet App Store. This provides first responder agencies with a repository of apps that
1137 have been tested to a known set of standards.

1138 PSOs should avoid the unauthorized “side loading” of mobile applications that are not subject to
1139 organizational vetting requirements.

1140 **B.4 Enterprise Mobility Management**

1141 The rapid evolution of mobile devices has introduced new paradigms for work environments, along with
1142 new challenges for enterprise IT to address. EMM solutions, as part of an EMM program, provide a
1143 variety of ways to view, organize, secure, and maintain a fleet of mobile devices. EMM solutions can
1144 vary greatly in form and function, but, in general, they make use of platform-provided application
1145 programming interfaces (APIs). Sections 3 and 4 of NIST SP 800-124 [\[25\]](#) describe the two basic
1146 approaches of EMM, along with components, capabilities, and their uses. One approach, commonly
1147 known as “fully managed,” controls the entire device. Another approach, usually used for bring-your-
1148 own-device situations, wraps or “containerizes” apps inside a secure sandbox so that they can be
1149 managed without affecting the rest of the device.

1150 EMM capabilities can be grouped into four general categories:

- 1151 1. General policy – centralized technology to enforce security policies of particular interest for mo-
1152 bile device security, such as accessing hardware sensors like global positioning system (GPS), ac-
1153 cessing native operating-system (OS) services like a web browser or email client, managing wire-
1154 less networks, monitoring when policy violations occur, and limiting access to enterprise ser-
1155 vices if the device is vulnerable or compromised
- 1156 2. Data communication and storage – automatically encrypting data in transit between the device
1157 and the organization (e.g., through a virtual private network [VPN]); strongly encrypting data at
1158 rest on internal and removable media storage; and wiping the device if it is being reissued to an-
1159 other user, has been lost, or has surpassed a certain number of incorrect unlock attempts
- 1160 3. User and device authentication – requiring a device password/passcode and parameters for
1161 password strength, remotely restoring access to a locked device, automatically locking the de-
1162 vice after an idle period, and remotely locking the device if needed
- 1163 4. Applications – restricting which app stores may be used, restricting which apps can be installed,
1164 requiring specific app permissions (such as using the camera or GPS), restricting the use of OS
1165 synchronization services, verifying digital signatures to ensure that apps are unmodified and
1166 sourced from trusted entities, and automatically installing/updating/removing applications ac-
1167 cording to administrative policies

1168 Public safety and first responder (PSFR) organizations will have different requirements for EMM; this
1169 document does not prescribe any specific process or procedure, but assumes that they have been
1170 established in accordance with agency requirements. However, sections of this document refer to the
1171 NIST Mobile Threat Catalogue (MTC) [\[21\]](#), which does list the use of EMM solutions as mitigations for
1172 certain types of threats.

1173 B.5 FIDO Enrollment Process

1174 Fast Identity Online (FIDO) provides a framework for users to register a variety of different multifactor
1175 authenticators and use them to authenticate to applications and identity providers (IdPs). Before an
1176 authenticator can be used in an online transaction, it must be associated with the user's identity. This
1177 process is described in NIST SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#) as *authenticator binding*. NIST SP 800-63B specifies
1178 requirements for binding authenticators to a user's account both during initial enrollment and after
1179 enrollment, and recommends that relying parties (RPs) support binding multiple authenticators to each
1180 user's account to enable alternative strong authenticators in case the primary authenticator is lost,
1181 stolen, or damaged.

1182 Authenticator binding may be an in-person or remote process, but, in both cases, the user's identity and
1183 control over the authenticator being bound to the account must be established. This is related to
1184 identity proofing, discussed in [Section B.1](#), but requires that credentials be issued in a manner that
1185 maintains a tight binding with the user identity that has been established through proofing. PSFR
1186 organizations will have different requirements for identity and credential management; this document
1187 does not prescribe any specific process or procedure, but assumes that they have been established in
1188 accordance with agency requirements.

1189 As an example, in-person authenticator binding could be implemented by having administrators
1190 authenticate with their own credentials and authorize the association of an authenticator with an
1191 enrolling user's account. Once a user has one enrolled authenticator, it can be used for online
1192 enrollment of other authenticators at the same assurance level or lower. Allowing users to enroll strong,
1193 multifactor authenticators based on authentication with weaker credentials, such as username and
1194 password or knowledge-based questions, can undermine the security of the overall authentication
1195 scheme and should be avoided.

1196 Appendix C: Architectural Considerations for the Mobile 1197 Application Single Sign-On Build

1198 This appendix details architectural considerations relating to single sign-on (SSO) with Open
1199 Authorization (OAuth) 2.0, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Request for Comments (RFC) 8252,
1200 and AppAuth open-source libraries; federation; and types of multifactor authentication (MFA).

1201 C.1 SSO with OAuth 2.0, IETF RFC 8252, and AppAuth Open-Source 1202 Libraries

1203 As stated above, SSO streamlines the user experience by enabling a user to authenticate once and to
1204 subsequently access different applications (apps) without having to authenticate again. SSO on mobile
1205 devices is complicated by the sandboxed architecture, which makes it difficult to share the session state
1206 with back-end systems between individual apps. Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) vendors have
1207 provided solutions through proprietary software development kits (SDKs), but this approach requires
1208 integrating the SDK with each individual app, and does not scale to a large and diverse population, such
1209 as the public safety and first responder (PSFR) user community.

1210 OAuth 2.0, when implemented in accordance with RFC 8252 (the *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps* Best Current
1211 Practice [BCP]), provides a standards-based SSO pattern for mobile apps. The OpenID Foundation's
1212 AppAuth libraries [14] can facilitate building mobile apps in full compliance with IETF RFC 8252, but any
1213 mobile app that follows RFC 8252's core recommendation of using a shared external user-agent for the
1214 OAuth authorization flow will have the benefit of SSO.

1215 To implement SSO with OAuth 2.0, this practice guide recommends that app developers choose one of
1216 the following options:

- 1217 ▪ They can implement IETF RFC 8252 themselves. This RFC specifies that OAuth 2.0 authorization
1218 requests from native apps should be made only through external user-agents, primarily the
1219 user's browser. This specification details the security and usability reasons for why this is the
1220 case and how native apps and authorization servers can implement this best practice. RFC 8252
1221 also recommends the use of Proof Key for Code Exchange (PKCE), as detailed in RFC 7636 [26],
1222 which protects against authorization code interception attacks.
- 1223 ▪ They can integrate the AppAuth open-source libraries (that implement RFC 8252 and RFC 7636)
1224 for mobile SSO. The AppAuth libraries make it easy for application developers to enable
1225 standards-based authentication, SSO, and authorization to application programming interfaces
1226 (APIs). This was the option chosen by the implementers of this build.

1227 When OAuth is implemented in a native app, it operates as a *public client*; this presents security
1228 concerns with aspects like client secrets and redirected uniform resource identifiers (URIs). The AppAuth
1229 pattern mitigates these concerns and provides several security advantages for developers. The primary

1230 benefit of RFC 8252 is that native apps use an external user-agent (e.g., the Chrome for Android web
1231 browser), instead of an embedded user-agent (e.g., an Android WebView) for their OAuth authorization
1232 requests.

1233 An embedded user-agent is demonstrably less secure and user-friendly than an external user-agent.
1234 Embedded user-agents potentially allow the client to log keystrokes, capture user credentials, copy
1235 session cookies, and automatically submit forms to bypass user consent. In addition, because session
1236 information for embedded user-agents is stored on a per-app basis, this does not allow for SSO
1237 functionality, which users generally prefer and which this practice guide sets out to implement. Recent
1238 versions of Android and iPhone operating system (iOS) both provide implementations of “in-app
1239 browser tabs” that retain the security benefits of using an external user-agent, while avoiding visible
1240 context-switching between the app and the browser; RFC 8252 recommends their use where available.
1241 In-app browser tabs are supported in Android 4.1 and higher, and iOS 9 and higher.

1242 AppAuth also requires that public client apps eschew client secrets in favor of PKCE, which is a standard
1243 extension to the OAuth 2.0 framework. When using the AppAuth pattern, the following steps are
1244 performed:

- 1245 1. The user opens the client app and initiates a sign-in.
- 1246 2. The client uses a browser to initiate an authorization request to the authentication server (AS).
- 1247 3. The user authenticates to the identity provider (IdP).
- 1248 4. The OpenID Connect (OIDC) / security assertion markup language (SAML) flow takes place, and
1249 the user authenticates to the AS.
- 1250 5. The browser requests an authorization code (“grant”) from the AS.
- 1251 6. The browser returns the grant to the client.
- 1252 7. The client uses its grant to request and obtain an access token.

1253 There is a possible attack vector at the end user’s device in this workflow if PKCE is not enabled. During
1254 Step 6, the AS redirects the browser to a URI on which the client app is listening, so that the client app
1255 can receive the grant. However, a malicious app could register for this URI, and attempt to intercept the
1256 grant so that it may obtain an access token. PKCE-enabled clients use a dynamically generated random
1257 *code verifier* to ensure proof of possession for the grant. If the grant is intercepted by a malicious app
1258 before being returned to the client, the malicious app will be unable to use the grant without the client’s
1259 secret verifier.

1260 AppAuth also outlines several other actions to consider, such as three types of redirect URIs, native app
1261 client registration guidance, and using reverse domain-name-based schemes. These are supported
1262 and/or enforced with secure defaults in the AppAuth libraries. The libraries are open-source and include

1263 sample code for implementation. In addition, if Universal Second Factor (U2F) or Universal
1264 Authentication Framework (UAF) is desired, that flow is handled entirely by the external user-agent, so
1265 client apps do not need to implement any of that functionality.

1266 The AppAuth library takes care of several boilerplate tasks for developers, such as caching access tokens
1267 and refresh tokens, checking access-token expiration, and automatically refreshing access tokens. To
1268 implement the AppAuth pattern in an Android app using the provided library, a developer needs to
1269 perform the following actions:

- 1270 ▪ add the Android AppAuth library as a Gradle dependency
- 1271 ▪ add a redirect URI to the Android manifest
- 1272 ▪ add the Java code to initiate the AppAuth flow, and to use the access token afterward
- 1273 ▪ register the app's redirect URI with the AS

1274 To implement the AppAuth pattern *without* using a library, the user will need to follow the general
1275 guidance laid out in RFC 8252, review and follow the OS-specific guidance in the AppAuth
1276 documentation [\[14\]](#), and adhere to the requirements of both the OAuth 2.0 framework documented in
1277 RFC 6749 [\[27\]](#), and PKCE.

1278 C.1.1 Attributes and Authorization

1279 Authorization, in the sense of applying a policy to determine the rights and privileges that apply to
1280 application requests, is beyond the scope of this practice guide. OAuth 2.0 provides delegation of user
1281 authorizations to mobile apps acting on their behalf, but this is distinct from the authorization policy
1282 enforced by the application. The guide is agnostic to the specific authorization model (e.g., role-based
1283 access control [RBAC], attribute-based access control [ABAC], capability lists) that applications will use,
1284 and the SSO mechanism documented here is compatible with virtually any back-end authorization
1285 policy.

1286 While applications could potentially manage user roles and privileges internally, federated
1287 authentication provides the capability for the IdP to provide user attributes to relying parties (RPs).
1288 These attributes might be used to map users to defined application roles, or used directly in an ABAC
1289 policy (e.g., to restrict access to sworn law enforcement officers). Apart from authorization, attributes
1290 may provide identifying information useful for audit functions, contact information, or other user data.

1291 In the build architecture, the AS is an RP to the user's IdP, which is either a SAML IdP or an OIDC
1292 provider. SAML IdPs can return attribute elements in the SAML response. OIDC providers can return
1293 attributes as claims in the identification (ID) token, or the AS can request them from the user
1294 information endpoint. In both cases, the AS can validate the IdP's signature of the asserted attributes to
1295 ensure their validity and integrity. Assertions can also optionally be encrypted, which both protects their

1296 confidentiality in transit and enforces audience restrictions because only the intended RP will be able to
1297 decrypt them.

1298 Once the AS has received and validated the asserted user attributes, it could use them as issuance
1299 criteria to determine whether an access token should be issued for the client to access the requested
1300 scopes. In the OAuth 2.0 framework, *scopes* are individual access entitlements that can be granted to a
1301 client application. In addition, the attributes could be provided to the protected resource server to
1302 enable the application to enforce its own authorization policies. Communications between the AS and
1303 protected resource are internal design concerns for the software-as-a-service (SaaS) provider. One
1304 method of providing attributes to the protected resource is for the AS to issue the access token as a
1305 JavaScript object notation (JSON) web token (JWT) containing the user's attributes. The protected
1306 resource could also obtain attributes by querying the AS's token introspection endpoint, where they
1307 could be provided as part of the token metadata in the introspection response.

1308 C.2 Federation

1309 The preceding section discussed the communication of attributes from the IdP to the AS for use in
1310 authorization decisions. In the build architecture, it is assumed that the SaaS provider may be an RP of
1311 many IdPs supporting different user organizations. Several first responder organizations have their own
1312 IdPs, each managing its own users' attributes. This presents a challenge if the RP needs to use those
1313 attributes for authorization. Local variations in attribute names, values, and encodings would make it
1314 difficult to apply a uniform authorization policy across the user base. If the SaaS platform enables the
1315 sharing of sensitive data between organizations, participants would need some assurance that their
1316 partners were establishing and managing user accounts and attributes appropriately—promptly
1317 removing access for terminated employees, and performing appropriate validation before assigning
1318 attributes that enable privileged access. Federations attempt to address this issue by creating common
1319 profiles and policies governing the use and management of attributes and authentication mechanisms,
1320 which members are expected to follow. This facilitates interoperability, and members are also typically
1321 audited for compliance with the federation's policies and practices, enabling mutual trust in attributes
1322 and authentication.

1323 As an example, National Identity Exchange Federation (NIEF) is a federation serving law-enforcement
1324 organizations and networks, including the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), the Department of
1325 Homeland Security (DHS), the Regional Information Sharing System (RISS), and the Texas Department of
1326 Public Safety. NIEF has established SAML profiles for both web-browser and system-to-system use cases,
1327 and a registry of common attributes for users, resources, and other entities. NIEF attributes are grouped
1328 into attribute bundles, with some designated as mandatory, meaning that all participating IdPs must
1329 provide those attributes, and participating RPs can depend on their presence in the SAML response.

1330 The architecture documented in this build guide is fully compatible with NIEF and other federations,
 1331 though this would require configuring IdPs and RPs in compliance with the federation’s policies. The use
 1332 of SAML IdPs is fully supported by this architecture, as is the coexistence of SAML IdPs and OIDC
 1333 providers.

1334 NIST SP 800-63-3 [\[16\]](#) defines Federation Assurance Levels (FALs) and their implementation
 1335 requirements. FALs are a measure of the assurance that assertions presented to an RP are genuine and
 1336 unaltered, pertain to the individual presenting them, are not subject to replay at other RPs, and are
 1337 protected from many additional potential attacks on federated authentication schemes. A high-level
 1338 summary of the requirements for FALs 1–3 is provided in Table C-1.

1339 **Table C-1 FAL Requirements**

FAL	Requirement
1	Bearer assertion, signed by IdP
2	Bearer assertion, signed by IdP and encrypted to RP
3	Holder of key assertion, signed by IdP and encrypted to RP

1340 IdPs typically sign assertions, and this functionality is broadly supported in available software. For SAML,
 1341 the IdP’s public key is provided in the SAML metadata. For OIDC, the public key can be provided through
 1342 the discovery endpoint, if supported; otherwise, the key would be provided to the RP out of band.
 1343 Encrypting assertions is also relatively trivial and requires providing the RP’s public key to the IdP. The
 1344 build architecture in this guide can support FAL-1 and FAL-2 with relative ease.

1345 The requirement for holder of key assertions makes FAL-3 more difficult to implement. A SAML holder
 1346 of key profile exists, but has never been widely implemented in a web-browser SSO context. The OIDC
 1347 Core specification does not include a mechanism for a holder of key assertions; however, the
 1348 forthcoming token binding over the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) specification [\[28\]](#) and related
 1349 RFCs may provide a pathway to supporting FAL-3 in an OIDC implementation.

1350 **C.3 Authenticator Types**

1351 When considering MFA implementations, PSFR organizations should carefully consider organizationally
 1352 defined authenticator requirements. These requirements may include, but are not limited to:

- 1353 ▪ the sensitivity of data being accessed and the commensurate level of authentication assurance
 1354 needed
- 1355 ▪ environmental constraints, such as gloves or masks, that may limit the usability and
 1356 effectiveness of certain authentication modalities

- 1357 ▪ costs throughout the authenticator life cycle, including authenticator binding, loss, theft,
1358 unauthorized duplication, expiration, and revocation
- 1359 ▪ policy and compliance requirements, such as the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability
1360 Act (HIPAA) [29], the Criminal Justice Information System (CJIS) Security Policy [30], or other
1361 organizationally defined requirements
- 1362 ▪ support of current information-technology (IT) infrastructure, including mobile devices, for
1363 various authenticator types

1364 The new, third revision of NIST SP 800-63, *Digital Identity Guidelines* [16], is a suite of documents that
1365 provide technical requirements and guidance for federal agencies implementing digital identity services,
1366 and may assist PSFR organizations when selecting authenticators. The most significant difference from
1367 previous versions of NIST SP 800-63 is the retirement of the previous assurance rating system, known as
1368 the Levels of Assurance (LOA), established by Office of Management and Budget Memorandum M-04-
1369 04, *E-Authentication Guidance for Federal Agencies*. In the new NIST SP 800-63-3 guidance, digital
1370 identity assurance is split up into three ordinals, as opposed to the single ordinal in LOA. The three
1371 ordinals are listed below:

- 1372 ▪ identity assurance level
- 1373 ▪ authenticator assurance level (AAL)
- 1374 ▪ FAL

1375 This practice guide is primarily concerned with AALs and how they apply to the reference architecture
1376 outlined in [Table 3-2](#).

1377 The strength of an authentication transaction is measured by the AAL. A higher AAL means stronger
1378 authentication, and requires more resources and capabilities by attackers to subvert the authentication
1379 process. We discuss a variety of multifactor implementations in this practice guide. NIST SP 800-63-3
1380 gives us a reference to map the risk reduction of the various implementations recommended in this
1381 practice guide.

1382 The AAL is determined by authenticator type and combination, verifier requirements, reauthentication
1383 policies, and security controls baselines, as defined in NIST SP 800-53, *Security and Privacy Controls for
1384 Federal Information Systems and Organizations* [31]. A summary of requirements at each of the levels is
1385 provided in Table C-2.

1386 A memorized secret (most commonly implemented as a password) satisfies AAL1, but this alone is not
1387 enough to reach the higher levels shown in Table C-2. For AAL2 and AAL3, some form of MFA is
1388 required. MFA comes in many forms. The architecture in this practice guide describes two examples.
1389 One example is a multifactor software cryptographic authenticator, where a biometric authenticator
1390 application is installed on the mobile device—the two factors being possession of the private key and
1391 the biometric. The other example is a combination of a memorized secret and a single-factor

1392 cryptographic device, which performs cryptographic operations via a direct connection to the user
 1393 endpoint.

1394 Reauthentication requirements also become more stringent for higher levels. AAL1 requires
 1395 reauthentication only every 30 days, but AAL2 and AAL3 require reauthentication every 12 hours. At
 1396 AAL2, users may reauthenticate using a single authentication factor, but, at AAL3, users must
 1397 reauthenticate using both of their authentication factors. At AAL2, 30 minutes of idle time is allowed,
 1398 but only 15 minutes is allowed at AAL3.

1399 For a full description of the different types of multifactor authenticators and AAL requirements, please
 1400 refer to NIST SP 800-63B [\[10\]](#).

1401 **Table C-2 AAL Summary of Requirements**

Requirement	AAL1	AAL2	AAL3
Permitted authenticator types	Memorized Secret; Look-up Secret; Out-of-Band; Single Factor (SF) One-time Password (OTP) Device; Multifactor (MF) OTP Device; SF Crypto Software; SF Crypto Device; MF Crypto Software; MF Crypto Device	MF OTP Device; MF Crypto Software; MF Crypto Device; or Memorized Secret plus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Look-up Secret ▪ Out-of-Band ▪ SF OTP Device ▪ SF Crypto Software ▪ SF Crypto Device 	MF Crypto Device; SF Crypto Device plus Memorized Secret; SF OTP Device plus MF Crypto Device or Software; SF OTP Device plus SF Crypto Software plus Memorized Secret
Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 verification	Level 1 (government agency verifiers)	Level 1 (government agency authenticators and verifiers)	Level 2 overall (MF authenticators) Level 1 overall (verifiers and SF Crypto Devices) Level 3 physical security (all authenticators)
Reauthentication	30 days	12 hours, or after 30 minutes of inactivity; MAY use one authentication factor	12 hours, or after 15 minutes of inactivity; SHALL use both authentication factors
Security controls	NIST SP 800-53 Low Baseline (or equivalent)	NIST SP 800-53 Moderate Baseline (or equivalent)	NIST SP 800-53 High Baseline (or equivalent)

Requirement	AAL1	AAL2	AAL3
Man-in-the-middle resistance	Required	Required	Required
Verifier-impersonation resistance	Not required	Not required	Required
Verifier-compromise resistance	Not required	Not required	Required
Replay resistance	Not required	Required	Required
Authentication intent	Not required	Recommended	Required
Records retention policy	Required	Required	Required
Privacy controls	Required	Required	Required

1402 The FIDO Alliance has published specifications for two types of authenticators based on UAF and U2F.
 1403 These protocols operate agnostic of the FIDO authenticator, allowing public safety organizations (PSOs)
 1404 to choose any FIDO-certified authenticator that meets operational requirements and to implement it
 1405 with this solution. As new FIDO-certified authenticators become available in the marketplace, PSOs may
 1406 choose to migrate to these new authenticators if they better meet PSFR needs in their variety of duties.

1407 C.3.1. UAF Protocol

1408 The UAF protocol [2] allows users to register their device to the online service by selecting a local
 1409 authentication mechanism, such as swiping a finger, looking at the camera, speaking into the
 1410 microphone, or entering a Personal Identification Number (PIN). The UAF protocol allows the service to
 1411 select which mechanisms are presented to the user. Once registered, the user simply repeats the local
 1412 authentication action whenever they need to authenticate to the service. The user no longer needs to
 1413 enter their password when authenticating from that device. UAF also allows experiences that combine
 1414 multiple authentication mechanisms, such as fingerprint plus PIN. Data used for local user verification,
 1415 such as biometric templates, passwords, or PINs, is validated locally on the device and is not transmitted
 1416 to the server. Authentication to the server is performed with a cryptographic key pair, which is unlocked
 1417 after local user verification.

1418 C.3.2 U2F Protocol

1419 The U2F protocol [3] allows online services to augment the security of their existing password
 1420 infrastructure by adding a strong second factor to user login, typically an external hardware-backed
 1421 cryptographic device. The user logs in with a username and password as before, and is then prompted
 1422 to present the external second factor. The service can prompt the user to present a second-factor device
 1423 at any time that it chooses. The strong second factor allows the service to simplify its passwords

1424 (e.g., four-digit PIN) without compromising security. During registration and authentication, the user
1425 presents the second factor by simply pressing a button on a universal serial bus (USB) device or tapping
1426 over Near Field Communication (NFC).

1427 The user can use their FIDO U2F device across all online services that support the protocol. On desktop
1428 operating systems, the Google Chrome and Opera browsers currently support U2F. U2F is also
1429 supported on Android through the Google Authenticator app, which must be installed from the Play
1430 Store. The 2.0 iteration of the FIDO standards will support the World Wide Web Consortium's (W3C)
1431 work-in-progress Web Authentication standard [32]. As a draft W3C recommendation, Web
1432 Authentication is expected to be widely adopted by web browser developers and to provide out-of-the-
1433 box U2F support, without the need to install additional client apps or extensions.

1434 C.3.3 FIDO Key Registration

1435 From the perspective of an IdP, enabling users to authenticate themselves with FIDO-based credentials
1436 requires that users register a cryptographic key with the IdP and associate the registered key with the
1437 username or distinguished name known to the IdP. FIDO registration might be repeated for each
1438 authenticator that the user chooses to associate with their account. FIDO protocols are different from
1439 most authentication protocols, in that they permit registering multiple cryptographic keys (from
1440 different authenticators) to use with a single account. This is convenient for end users, as it provides a
1441 natural backup solution to lost, misplaced, or forgotten authenticators—users may use any one of their
1442 registered authenticators to access their applications.

1443 The process of a first-time FIDO key registration is fairly simple:

- 1444 1. A user creates an account for themselves at an application site, or one is created for them as
1445 part of a business process.
- 1446 2. The user registers a FIDO key with the application through one of the following processes:
 - 1447 a. as part of the account self-creation process
 - 1448 b. as part of receiving an email with an invitation to register
 - 1449 c. as part of a registration process, after an authentication process within an organization
1450 application
 - 1451 d. A FIDO authenticator with a temporary, preregistered key is provided so that the user
1452 can strongly authenticate to register a new key with the application, at which point the
1453 temporary key is deleted permanently. Authenticators with preregistered keys may be
1454 combined with shared secrets given/sent to the user out-of-band to verify their identity
1455 before enabling them to register a new FIDO key with the organization's application.
 - 1456 e. as part of a custom process local to the IdP

1457 Policy at the organization dictates what might be considered most appropriate for a registration process.

1458 C.3.4 FIDO Authenticator Attestation

1459 To meet AAL requirements, RPs may need to restrict the types of FIDO authenticators that can be
1460 registered and used to authenticate. They may also require assurances that the authenticators in use are
1461 not counterfeit or vulnerable to known attacks. The FIDO specifications include mechanisms that enable
1462 the RP to validate the identity and security properties of authenticators, which are provided in a
1463 standard metadata format.

1464 Each FIDO authenticator has an attestation key pair and certificate. To maintain FIDO's privacy
1465 guarantees, these attestation keys are not unique for each device, but are typically assigned on a
1466 manufacturing batch basis. During authenticator registration, the RP can check the validity of the
1467 attestation certificate and validate the signed registration data to verify that the authenticator
1468 possesses the private attestation key.

1469 For software authenticators, which cannot provide protection of a private attestation key, the UAF
1470 protocol allows for surrogate basic attestation. In this mode, the key pair generated to authenticate the
1471 user to the RP is used to sign the registration data object, including the attestation data. This is
1472 analogous to the use of self-signed certificates for HTTPS, in that it does not actually provide
1473 cryptographic proof of the security properties of the authenticator. A potential concern is that the RP
1474 could not distinguish between a genuine software authenticator and a malicious lookalike authenticator
1475 that could provide registered credentials to an attacker. In an enterprise setting, this concern could be
1476 mitigated by delivering the valid authenticator app by using EMM or another controlled distribution
1477 mechanism.

1478 Authenticator metadata would be most important in scenarios where an RP accepts multiple
1479 authenticators with different assurance levels and applies authorization policies based on the security
1480 properties of the authenticators (e.g., whether they provide Federal Information Processing Standard
1481 [FIPS] 140-2-validated key storage [\[33\]](#)). In practice, most existing enterprise implementations use a
1482 single type of authenticator.

1483 C.3.5 FIDO Deployment Considerations

1484 To support any of the FIDO standards for authentication, some integration needs to happen on the
1485 server side. Depending on how the federated architecture is set up—whether with OIDC or SAML—this
1486 integration may look different. In general, there are two servers where a FIDO server can be integrated:
1487 the AS (also known as the RP) and the IdP.

1488 FIDO Integration at the IdP

1489 Primary authentication already happens at the IdP, so logic follows that FIDO authentication (e.g., U2F,
1490 UAF) would as well. This is the most common and well-understood model for using a FIDO
1491 authentication server, and, consequently, there is solid guidance for setting up such an architecture. The

1492 IdP already has detailed knowledge of the user and directly interacts with the user (e.g., during
1493 registration), so it is not difficult to insert the FIDO server into the registration and authentication flows.
1494 In addition, this gives PSOs the most control over the security controls that are used to authenticate
1495 their users. However, there are a few downsides to this approach:

- 1496 ▪ The PSO must now budget, host, manage, and/or pay for the cost of the FIDO server.
- 1497 ▪ The only authentication of the user at the AS is the bearer assertion from the IdP, so an
1498 assertion intercepted by an attacker could be used to impersonate the legitimate user at the AS.

1499 **FIDO Integration at the AS**

1500 Another option is to integrate FIDO authentication at the AS. One benefit of this is that PSOs will not be
1501 responsible for the expenses of maintaining a FIDO server. In addition, an attacker who intercepted a
1502 valid user’s SAML assertion or ID token could not easily impersonate the user because of the
1503 requirement to authenticate to the AS as well. This approach assumes that some mechanism is in place
1504 for tightly binding the FIDO authenticator with the user’s identity, which is a nontrivial task. In addition,
1505 this approach has several downsides:

- 1506 ▪ Splitting authentication into a two-stage process that spans the IdP and AS is a less
1507 well-understood model for authentication, which may lead to subtle issues.
- 1508 ▪ The AS does not have detailed knowledge of—or direct action with—users, so enrollment is
1509 more difficult.
- 1510 ▪ Users would have to register their FIDO authenticators at every AS that is federated to their IdP,
1511 which adds complexity and frustration to the process.
- 1512 ▪ PSOs would lose the ability to enforce which kinds of FIDO token(s) their users utilize.

1513 **Appendix D** List of Acronyms

AAL	Authenticator Assurance Level
ABAC	Attribute-Based Access Control
API	Application Programming Interface
AS	Authorization Server
BCP	Best Current Practice
CA	Certificate Authority
CJIS	Criminal Justice Information System
CRADA	Cooperative Research and Development Agreement
CSF	Cybersecurity Framework
CVE	Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures
DHS	Department of Homeland Security
EMM	Enterprise Mobility Management
FAL	Federation Assurance Level
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
FIDO	Fast Identity Online
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standard
FirstNet	First Responder Network Authority
FOIA	Freedom of Information Act
GPS	Global Positioning System
HIPAA	Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act
HTML	Hypertext Markup Language
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
IA	Information Assurance
ID	Identification
IdP	Identity Provider
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
iOS	iPhone Operating System
IP	Internet Protocol
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IT	Information Technology
JSON	JavaScript Object Notation
JWT	JSON Web Token
LES	Law Enforcement Sensitive
LOA	Levels of Assurance
MF	Multifactor
MFA	Multifactor Authentication
MMS	Multimedia Messaging Service
MSSO	Mobile Single Sign-On

MTC	Mobile Threat Catalogue
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NFC	Near Field Communication
NIEF	National Identity Exchange Federation
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NISTIR	National Institute of Standards and Technology Interagency Report
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OAuth	Open Authorization
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
OIDC	OpenID Connect
OOB	Out-of-Band
OS	Operating System
OTP	Onetime Password
PAN	Personal Area Network
PHI	Protected Health Information
PII	Personally Identifiable Information
PIN	Personal Identification Number
PKCE	Proof Key for Code Exchange
PSCR	Public Safety Communications Research
PSFR	Public Safety and First Responder
PSO	Public Safety Organization
PSX	Public Safety Experience
RBAC	Role-Based Access Control
RCS	Rich Communication Services
REST	Representational State Transfer
RFC	Request for Comments
RISS	Regional Information Sharing System
RP	Relying Party
SaaS	Software as a Service
SAML	Security Assertion Markup Language
SD	Secure Digital
SDK	Software Development Kit
SF	Single Factor
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module
SKCE	StrongKey Crypto Engine
SMS	Short Message Service
SP	Special Publication
SSO	Single Sign-On
SwA	Software Assurance
TLS	Transport Layer Security
TPM	Trusted Platform Module
U2F	Universal Second Factor

DRAFT

UAF	Universal Authentication Framework
UI	User Interface
UICC	Universal Integrated Circuit Card
URI	Uniform Resource Identifier
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
USIM	Universal Subscriber Identity Module
USSD	Unstructured Supplementary Service Data
VoLTE	Voice over Long-Term Evolution
VPN	Virtual Private Network
W3C	World Wide Web Consortium

1514 **Appendix E** **References**

- [1] W. Denniss and J. Bradley, *OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps*, Best Current Practice (BCP) 212, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 8252, October 2017. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8252> [accessed February 2018].
- [2] S. Machani, R. Philpott, S. Srinivas, J. Kemp, and J. Hodges, *FIDO UAF Architectural Overview: FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft*, FIDO Alliance, Wakefield, MA, 2017. <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-uaf-v1.1-id-20170202/fido-uaf-overview-v1.1-id-20170202.html> [accessed February 2018].
- [3] S. Srinivas, D. Balfanz, E. Tiffany, and A. Czeskis, *Universal 2nd Factor (U2F) Overview: FIDO Alliance Proposed Standard*, FIDO Alliance, Wakefield, MA, 2017. <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-u2f-v1.2-ps-20170411/fido-u2f-overview-v1.2-ps-20170411.html> [accessed February 2018].
- [4] S. Cantor, J. Kemp, R. Philpott, and E. Maler, *Assertions and Protocols for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V2.0*, OASIS Standard, March 2005. <http://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf> [accessed February 2018].
- [5] N. Sakimura, J. Bradley, M. Jones, B. de Medeiros, and C. Mortimore, *OpenID Connect Core 1.0 incorporating errata set 1*, November 2014. <http://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1.0.html> [accessed February 2018].
- [6] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Conducting Risk Assessments*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-30 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, September 2012. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-30r1> [accessed February 2018].
- [7] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Guide for Applying the Risk Management Framework to Federal Information Systems: A Security Life Cycle Approach*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-37 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, February 2010. <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-37r1.pdf> [accessed April 2018].
- [8] C. Johnson, L. Badger, D. Waltermire, J. Snyder, and C. Skorupka, *Guide to Cyber Threat Information Sharing*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-150, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, October 2016. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-150> [accessed February 2018].

- [9] C. Brown, S. Dog, J. Franklin, N. McNab, S. Voss-Northrop, M. Peck, and B. Stidham, *Assessing Threats to Mobile Devices & Infrastructure: The Mobile Threat Catalogue*, Draft NISTIR 8144, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, September 2016. <https://nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/mtc-nistir-8144-draft.pdf> [accessed February 2018].
- [10] P. Grassi, J. Fenton, E. Newton, R. Perlner, A. Regenscheid, W. Burr, J. Richer, N. Lefkowitz, J. Danker, Y. Choong, K. Greene, and M. Theofanos, *Digital Identity Guidelines: Authentication and Lifecycle Management*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-63B, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, June 2017. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63b> [accessed February 2018].
- [11] P. Grassi, J. Richer, S. Squire, J. Fenton, E. Nadeau, N. Lefkowitz, J. Danker, Y. Choong, K. Greene, and M. Theofanos, *Digital Identity Guidelines: Federation and Assertions*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-63C, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, June 2017. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63c> [accessed February 2018].
- [12] International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission/Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, *Systems and software engineering—System life cycle processes*, ISO/IEC/IEEE 15288:2015, 2015. <https://www.iso.org/standard/63711.html> [accessed February 2018].
- [13] R. Ross, M. McEvelley, and J. Carrier Oren, *Systems Security Engineering: Considerations for a Multidisciplinary Approach in the Engineering of Trustworthy Secure Systems*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-160, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, November 2016. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-160> [accessed February 2018].
- [14] *AppAuth*, AppAuth [Web site], <https://appauth.io/> [accessed February 2018].
- [15] M. Jones and D. Hardt, *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework: Bearer Token Usage*, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 6750, October 2012. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6750> [accessed February 2018].
- [16] P. Grassi, M. Garcia, and J. Fenton, *Digital Identity Guidelines*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-63-3, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, June 2017. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63-3> [accessed February 2018].

- [17] T. Lodderstedt, Ed., M. McGloin, and P. Hunt, *OAuth 2.0 Threat Model and Security Considerations*, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 6819, January 2013. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6819> [accessed February 2018].
- [18] *NIST Internet Time Servers*, NIST [Web site], <https://tf.nist.gov/tf-cgi/servers.cgi> [accessed February 2018].
- [19] P. Grassi, J. Fenton, N. Lefkovitz, J. Danker, Y. Choong, K. Greene, and M. Theofanos, *Digital Identity Guidelines: Enrollment and Identity Proofing*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-63A, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, June 2017. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-63a> [accessed February 2018].
- [20] J. Franklin, K. Bowler, C. Brown, S. Edwards, N. McNab, and M. Steele, *Mobile Device Security: Cloud and Hybrid Builds*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 1800-4, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, November 2015. <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/sp1800/mds-nist-sp1800-4-draft.pdf> [accessed February 2018].
- [21] C. Brown, S. Dog, J. Franklin, N. McNab, S. Voss-Northrop, M. Peck, and B. Stidham, *Mobile Threat Catalogue*, 2016. <https://pages.nist.gov/mobile-threat-catalogue/> [accessed February 2018].
- [22] Committee on National Security Systems (CNSS), *National Information Assurance (IA) Glossary*, CNSS Instruction Number 4009, April 2010. https://www.ecs.csus.edu/csc/iac/cnssi_4009.pdf [accessed April 2018].
- [23] S. Quirolgico, J. Voas, T. Karygiannis, C. Michael, and K. Scarfone, *Vetting the Security of Mobile Applications*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-163, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, January 2015. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-163> [accessed February 2018].
- [24] *FirstNet App Developer Program*, First Responder Network Authority [Web site], <https://www.firstnet.com/apps/app-developer-program> [accessed February 2018].
- [25] M. Souppaya and K. Scarfone, *Guidelines for Managing the Security of Mobile Devices in the Enterprise*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-124 Revision 1, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, June 2013. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-124r1> [accessed February 2018].

- [26] N. Sakimura, J. Bradley, and N. Agarwal, *Proof Key for Code Exchange by OAuth Public Clients*, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 7636, September 2015. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7636> [accessed February 2018].
- [27] D. Hardt, Ed., *The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework*, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group Request for Comments (RFC) 6749, October 2012. <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6749> [accessed February 2018].
- [28] A. Popov, M. Nystroem, D. Balfanz, A. Langley, N. Harper, and J. Hodges, *Token Binding over HTTP: draft-ietf-tokbind-https-12*, Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Internet-Draft, January 2018. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-tokbind-https/> [accessed February 2018].
- [29] *Fact Sheet: The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)*, U.S. Department of Labor, Employee Benefits Security Administration [Web site], <https://permanent.access.gpo.gov/gpo10291/fshipaa.html> [accessed February 2018].
- [30] U.S. Department of Justice, Federal Bureau of Investigation, Criminal Justice Information Services Division, *Criminal Justice Information Services (CJIS) Security Policy*, Version 5.6, June 2017. <https://www.fbi.gov/services/cjis/cjis-security-policy-resource-center> [accessed April 2018].
- [31] Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Security and Privacy Controls for Federal Information Systems and Organizations*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-53 Revision 4, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, January 2015. <https://dx.doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-53r4> [accessed February 2018].
- [32] V. Bharadwaj, H. Le Van Gong, D. Balfanz, A. Czeskis, A. Birgisson, J. Hodges, M. Jones, R. Lindemann, and J.C. Jones, *Web Authentication: An API for accessing Public Key Credentials Level 1*, W3C Candidate Recommendation, March 2018. <https://www.w3.org/TR/webauthn/> [accessed February 2018].
- [33] U.S. Department of Commerce. *Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules*, Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) Publication 140-2, May 2001. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.140-2> [accessed February 2018].

DRAFT

NIST SPECIAL PUBLICATION 1800-13C

Mobile Application Single Sign-On

Improving Authentication for Public Safety First Responders

Volume C:
How-To Guides

Paul Grassi

Applied Cybersecurity Division
Information Technology Laboratory

Bill Fisher

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
Information Technology Laboratory

Santos Jha

William Kim

Taylor McCorkill

Joseph Portner

Mark Russell

Sudhi Umarji

The MITRE Corporation
McLean, VA

April 2018

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/use-cases/mobile-sso>



DRAFT

DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-13C, Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-13C, 163 pages, (April 2018), CODEN: NSPUE2

FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: psfr-nccoe@nist.gov.

Public comment period: April 16, 2018 through June 18, 2018

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
National Institute of Standards and Technology
100 Bureau Drive
Mailstop 2002
Gaithersburg, MD 20899
Email: nccoe@nist.gov

NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE

The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in IT security—the NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cyber Security Framework and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County, Md.

To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://nccoe.nist.gov>. To learn more about NIST, visit <https://www.nist.gov>.

NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES

NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication Series 1800) target specific cybersecurity challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant standards and best practices and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other information they need to implement a similar approach.

The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

ABSTRACT

On-demand access to public safety data is critical to ensuring that public safety and first responder (PSFR) personnel can deliver the proper care and support during an emergency. This requirement necessitates heavy reliance on mobile platforms while in the field, which may be used to access sensitive information, such as personally identifiable information (PII), law enforcement sensitive (LES) information, or protected health information (PHI). However, complex authentication requirements can hinder the process of providing emergency services, and any delay—even seconds—can become a matter of life or death.

In collaboration with NIST’S Public Safety Communications Research lab (PSCR) and industry stakeholders, the NCCoE aims to help PSFR personnel to efficiently and securely gain access to mission data via mobile devices and applications (apps). This practice guide describes a reference design for multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) for native and web apps, while improving interoperability between mobile platforms, apps, and identity providers, irrespective of the app development platform used in their construction. This NCCoE practice guide details a collaborative effort between the NCCoE and technology providers to demonstrate a standards-based approach using commercially available and open-source products.

This guide discusses potential security risks facing organizations, benefits that may result from the implementation of an MFA/MSSO system, and the approach that the NCCoE took in developing a reference architecture and build. This guide includes a discussion of major architecture design considerations, an explanation of the security characteristics achieved by the reference design, and a mapping of the security characteristics to applicable standards and security control families.

For parties interested in adopting all or part of the NCCoE reference architecture, this guide includes a detailed description of the installation, configuration, and integration of all components.

KEYWORDS

access control; authentication; authorization; identity; identity management; identity provider; single sign-on; relying party

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Donna Dodson	NIST NCCoE
Tim McBride	NIST NCCoE
Jeff Vettrano	FirstNet
FNU Rajan	FirstNet
John Beltz	NIST Public Safety Communications Research Lab
Chris Leggett	Ping Identity

Name	Organization
Paul Madsen	Ping Identity
John Bradley	Yubico
Adam Migus	Yubico
Derek Hanson	Yubico
Adam Lewis	Motorola Solutions
Mike Korus	Motorola Solutions
Dan Griesmann	Motorola Solutions
Arshad Noor	StrongAuth
Pushkar Marathe	StrongAuth
Max Smyth	StrongAuth
Scott Wong	StrongAuth
Akhilesh Sah	Nok Nok Labs
Avinash Umap	Nok Nok Labs

The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Ping Identity	Federation Server

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Motorola Solutions	Mobile Apps
Yubico	External Authenticators
Nok Nok Labs	Fast Identity Online (FIDO) Universal Authentication Framework (UAF) Server
StrongAuth	FIDO Universal Second Factor (U2F) Server

1	Contents	
2	1 Introduction	1
3	1.1 Practice Guide Structure	1
4	1.2 Build Overview	1
5	1.2.1 Usage Scenarios	2
6	1.2.2 Architectural Overview	3
7	1.2.3 General Infrastructure Requirements.....	5
8	1.3 Typographic Conventions.....	5
9	2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Device.....	6
10	2.1 Platform and System Requirements	6
11	2.1.1 Supporting SSO	7
12	2.1.2 Supporting FIDO U2F	8
13	2.1.3 Supporting FIDO UAF	8
14	2.2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Apps.....	9
15	2.2.1 How to Install and Configure SSO-Enabled Apps.....	9
16	2.2.2 How to Install and Configure a FIDO U2F Authenticator.....	20
17	2.2.3 How to Install and Configure a FIDO UAF Client.....	22
18	2.3 How App Developers Must Integrate AppAuth for SSO.....	30
19	2.3.1 Adding the Library Dependency	31
20	2.3.2 Adding Activities to the Manifest	31
21	2.3.3 Create Activities to Handle Authorization Responses	32
22	2.3.4 Executing the OAuth 2 Authorization Flow	36
23	2.3.5 Fetching and Using the Access Token.....	38
24	3 How to Install and Configure the OAuth 2 AS	39
25	3.1 Platform and System Requirements	39
26	3.1.1 Software Requirements	39
27	3.1.2 Hardware Requirements.....	39
28	3.1.3 Network Requirements.....	40
29	3.2 How to Install the OAuth 2 AS.....	41

30	3.2.1	Java Installation.....	41
31	3.2.2	Java Post Installation.....	41
32	3.2.3	PingFederate Installation.....	43
33	3.2.4	Certificate Installation.....	43
34	3.3	How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS.....	43
35	3.4	How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS for Authentication.....	57
36	3.4.1	How to Configure Direct Authentication.....	58
37	3.4.2	How to Configure SAML Authentication.....	67
38	3.4.3	How to Configure OIDC Authentication.....	74
39	3.4.4	How to Configure the Authentication Policy.....	81
40	4	How to Install and Configure the Identity Providers.....	87
41	4.1	How to Configure the User Store.....	87
42	4.2	How to Install and Configure the SAML Identity Provider.....	91
43	4.2.1	Configuring Authentication to the IdP.....	93
44	4.2.2	Configure the SP Connection.....	103
45	4.3	How to Install and Configure the OIDC Identity Provider.....	110
46	4.3.1	Configuring Authentication to the OIDC IdP.....	111
47	4.3.2	Configuring the OIDC Client Connection.....	123
48	5	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server... 125	
49	5.1	Platform and System Requirements.....	126
50	5.1.1	Hardware Requirements.....	126
51	5.1.2	Software Requirements.....	126
52	5.2	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server.....	127
53	5.3	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Gateway Server.....	128
54	5.4	How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Adapter for the OAuth 2 AS.....	128
55	6	How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server ... 129	
56	6.1	Platform and System Requirements.....	129
57	6.1.1	Software Requirements.....	129
58	6.1.2	Hardware Requirements.....	130

59 6.1.3 Network Requirements.....130

60 6.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server..... 131

61 6.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter for the IdP 135

62 6.3.1 FIDO U2F Registration in Production136

63 **7 Functional Tests..... 136**

64 7.1 Testing FIDO Authenticators 136

65 7.2 Testing FIDO Servers..... 137

66 7.3 Testing IdPs..... 137

67 7.4 Testing the AS..... 143

68 7.5 Testing the Application..... 145

69 **Appendix A Abbreviations and Acronyms..... 146**

70 **Appendix B References..... 149**

71 **List of Figures**

72 **Figure 1-1 Lab Build Architecture.....3**

73 **Figure 2-1 Comparison of UAF and U2F Standards.....7**

74 **Figure 2-2 FIDO UAF Architectural Overview9**

75 **Figure 2-3 PSX Cockpit Setup10**

76 **Figure 2-4 PSX Cockpit Setup, Continued.....11**

77 **Figure 2-5 PSX Cockpit Group List Selection.....12**

78 **Figure 2-6 PSX Cockpit Groups13**

79 **Figure 2-7 PSX Cockpit Group List Setup Complete14**

80 **Figure 2-8 PSX Cockpit User Interface15**

81 **Figure 2-9 PSX Mapping User Interface16**

82 **Figure 2-10 PSX Mapping Group Member Information17**

83 **Figure 2-11 PSX Messenger User Interface18**

84 **Figure 2-12 PSX Messenger Messages.....19**

85	Figure 2-13 FIDO U2F Registration	21
86	Figure 2-14 FIDO U2F Authentication.....	22
87	Figure 2-15 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial App Authentication.....	24
88	Figure 2-16 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial App Login	25
89	Figure 2-17 FIDO UAF Registration Interface	26
90	Figure 2-18 FIDO UAF Registration QR Code.....	27
91	Figure 2-19 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow.....	28
92	Figure 2-20 FIDO UAF Fingerprint Authenticator	29
93	Figure 2-21 FIDO UAF Registration Success	30
94	Figure 3-1 Access Token Attribute Mapping Framework.....	44
95	Figure 3-2 Server Roles for AS.....	47
96	Figure 3-3 Federation Info	48
97	Figure 3-4 AS Settings.....	49
98	Figure 3-5 Scopes	51
99	Figure 3-6 Access Token Management Instance	52
100	Figure 3-7 Access Token Manager Instance Configuration	53
101	Figure 3-8 Access Token Manager Attribute Contract	54
102	Figure 3-9 OAuth Client Registration, Part 1	55
103	Figure 3-10 OAuth Client Registration, Part 2	56
104	Figure 3-11 Create Adapter Instance.....	59
105	Figure 3-12 FIDO Adapter Settings.....	60
106	Figure 3-13 FIDO Adapter Contract	61
107	Figure 3-14 FIDO Adapter Instance Summary	62
108	Figure 3-15 Policy Contract Information.....	63
109	Figure 3-16 Policy Contract Attributes.....	63
110	Figure 3-17 Create Authentication Policy Contract Mapping.....	64
111	Figure 3-18 Authentication Policy Contract Fulfillment.....	65
112	Figure 3-19 Create Access Token Attribute Mapping	66

113	Figure 3-20 Access Token Mapping Contract Fulfillment	66
114	Figure 3-21 Create IdP Connection	68
115	Figure 3-22 IdP Connection Options	68
116	Figure 3-23 IdP Connection General Info	69
117	Figure 3-24 IdP Connection – User-Session Creation	70
118	Figure 3-25 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping	71
119	Figure 3-26 IdP Connection – Protocol Settings	72
120	Figure 3-27 Policy Contract for SAML RP	73
121	Figure 3-28 Contract Mapping for SAML RP	74
122	Figure 3-29 IdP Connection Type	75
123	Figure 3-30 IdP Connection Options	75
124	Figure 3-31 IdP Connection General Info	76
125	Figure 3-32 IdP Connection Authentication Policy Contract	77
126	Figure 3-33 IdP Connection Policy Contract Mapping	78
127	Figure 3-34 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping	79
128	Figure 3-35 IdP Connection Protocol Settings	80
129	Figure 3-36 IdP Connection Activation and Summary	81
130	Figure 3-37 Authentication Selector Instance	82
131	Figure 3-38 Authentication Selector Details	83
132	Figure 3-39 Selector Result Values	84
133	Figure 3-40 Policy Settings	84
134	Figure 3-41 Authentication Policy	85
135	Figure 3-42 Policy Contract Mapping for IdP Connections	86
136	Figure 3-43 Policy Contract Mapping for Local Authentication	87
137	Figure 4-1 Active Directory Users and Computers	88
138	Figure 4-2 Server Configuration	89
139	Figure 4-3 Data Store Type	90
140	Figure 4-4 LDAP Data Store Configuration	91

141	Figure 4-5 Server Roles for SAML IdP	92
142	Figure 4-6 SAML IdP Federation Info	93
143	Figure 4-7 Create Password Credential Validator.....	94
144	Figure 4-8 Credential Validator Configuration	95
145	Figure 4-9 Password Credential Validator Extended Contract	96
146	Figure 4-10 Password Validator Summary.....	97
147	Figure 4-11 HTML Form Adapter Instance	98
148	Figure 4-12 Form Adapter Settings.....	99
149	Figure 4-13 Form Adapter Extended Contract	100
150	Figure 4-14 Create U2F Adapter Instance	101
151	Figure 4-15 U2F Adapter Settings.....	102
152	Figure 4-16 IdP Authentication Policy	103
153	Figure 4-17 SP Connection Type.....	104
154	Figure 4-18 SP Connection General Info	105
155	Figure 4-19 SP Browser SSO Profiles	106
156	Figure 4-20 Assertion Identity Mapping	107
157	Figure 4-21 Assertion Attribute Contract.....	107
158	Figure 4-22 Assertion Attribute Contract Fulfillment	108
159	Figure 4-23 Browser SSO Protocol Settings.....	109
160	Figure 4-24 OIDC IdP Roles	110
161	Figure 4-25 Create Access Token Manager	112
162	Figure 4-26 Access Token Manager Configuration	113
163	Figure 4-27 Access Token Attribute Contract.....	114
164	Figure 4-28 Access Token Contract Fulfillment	115
165	Figure 4-29 Data Store for User Lookup	116
166	Figure 4-30 Attribute Directory Search.....	117
167	Figure 4-31 Access Token Contract Fulfillment	118
168	Figure 4-32 Access Token Issuance Criteria.....	119

169	Figure 4-33 OIDC Policy Creation	120
170	Figure 4-34 OIDC Policy Attribute Contract	121
171	Figure 4-35 OIDC Policy Contract Fulfillment	122
172	Figure 4-36 OIDC Client Configuration.....	124
173	Figure 6-1 Glassfish SSL Settings	134
174	Figure 7-1 Using Postman to Obtain the ID Token	142
175	Figure 7-2 Authorization Prompt	144
176	Figure 7-3 Token Introspection Request and Response.....	145

177 1 Introduction

178 The following guide demonstrates a standards-based example solution for efficiently and securely
179 gaining access to mission-critical data via mobile devices and applications (apps). This guide
180 demonstrates multifactor authentication (MFA) and mobile single sign-on (MSSO) solutions for native
181 and web apps using standards-based commercially available and open-source products. We cover all of
182 the products that we employed in our solution set. We do not recreate the product manufacturer's
183 documentation. Instead, we provide pointers to where this documentation is available from the
184 manufacturers. This guide shows how we incorporated the products together in our environment as a
185 reference implementation of the proposed build architecture for doing MSSO.

186 *Note: This is not a comprehensive tutorial. There are many possible service and security configurations*
187 *for these products that are out of scope for this reference solution set.*

188 1.1 Practice Guide Structure

189 This National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a
190 standards-based example solution and provides users with the information they need to replicate this
191 approach to implementing our MSSO build. The example solution is modular and can be deployed in
192 whole or in parts.

193 This guide contains three volumes:

- 194 ▪ NIST SP 1800-13A: *Executive Summary*
- 195 ▪ NIST SP 1800-13B: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics* – what we built and why
- 196 ▪ NIST SP 1800-13C: *How-To Guides* – instructions for building the example solution (**you are**
197 **here**)

198 See Section 2 in Volume B of this guide for a more detailed overview of the different volumes and
199 sections, and the audiences that may be interested in each.

200 1.2 Build Overview

201 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) worked with its build team partners to create a
202 lab demonstration environment that includes all of the architectural components and functionality
203 described in Section 4 of Volume B of this build guide. This includes mobile devices with sample apps,
204 hardware and software-based authenticators to demonstrate the Fast Identity Online (FIDO) standards
205 for MFA, the authentication server and authorization server (AS) components required to demonstrate
206 the AppAuth authorization flows (detailed in Internet Engineering Task Force [IETF] Request for
207 Comments [RFC] 8252) with federated authentication to a Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML)
208 Identity Provider (IdP) and an OpenID Connect (OIDC) Provider. The complete build includes several

209 systems deployed in the NCCoE lab by StrongAuth, Yubico and Ping Identity as well as cloud-hosted
210 resources made available by Motorola Solutions and by Nok Nok Labs.

211 This section of the build guide documents the build process and specific configurations that were used in
212 the lab.

213 1.2.1 Usage Scenarios

214 The build architecture supports three usage scenarios. The scenarios all demonstrate single sign-on
215 (SSO) among Motorola Solutions Public Safety Experience (PSX) apps using the AppAuth pattern, but
216 differ in the details of the authentication process. The three authentication mechanisms are as follows:

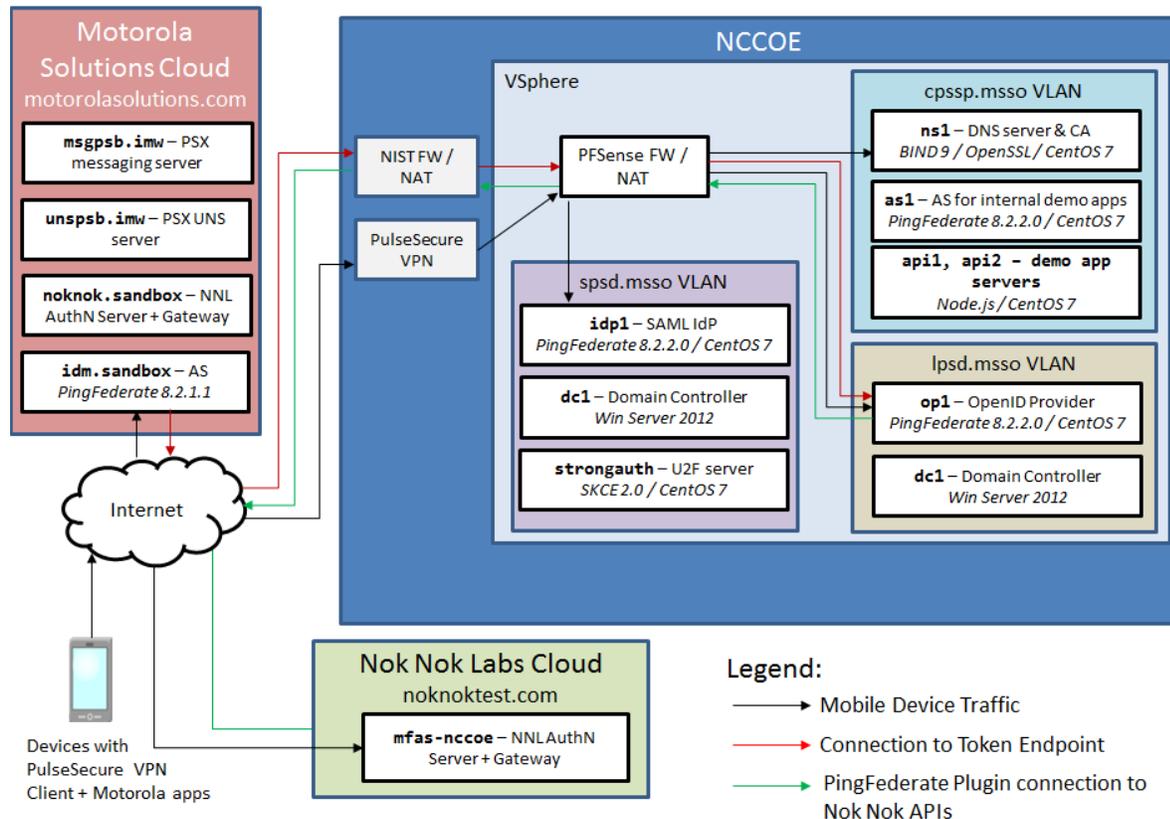
- 217 ▪ The OAuth AS directly authenticates the user with FIDO Universal Authentication Framework
218 (UAF); user accounts are managed directly by the service provider.
- 219 ▪ The OAuth AS redirects the user to a SAML IdP, which authenticates the user with a password
220 and FIDO U2F.
- 221 ▪ The OAuth AS redirects the user to an OIDC IdP, which authenticates the user with FIDO UAF.

222 In all three scenarios, once the authentication flow is completed, the user can launch multiple Motorola
223 Solutions PSX apps without additional authentication, demonstrating SSO. These three scenarios were
224 chosen to reflect different real-world implementation options that public safety and first responder
225 (PSFR) organizations might choose. Larger PSFR organizations may host (or obtain from a service
226 provider) their own IdPs, enabling them to locally manage user accounts, group memberships, and other
227 user attributes, and to provide them to multiple Relying Parties (RPs) through federation. SAML is
228 currently the most commonly used federation protocol, but OIDC might be preferred for new
229 implementations. As demonstrated in this build, RPs can support both protocols more or less
230 interchangeably. For smaller organizations, a service provider might also act in the role of “identity
231 provider of last resort,” maintaining user accounts and attributes on behalf of organizations.

232 1.2.2 Architectural Overview

233 Figure 1-1 shows the lab build architecture.

234 Figure 1-1 Lab Build Architecture



235

236 Figure 1-1 depicts the four environments that interact in the usage scenarios:

- 237
- 238
- 239
- 240
- 241
- 242
- 243
- 244
- 245
- 246
- 247
- Motorola Solutions cloud – a cloud-hosted environment providing the back-end app servers for the Motorola Solutions PSX Mapping and Messaging apps, as well as an OAuth AS that the app servers use to authorize requests from mobile devices
 - Nok Nok Labs cloud – a cloud-hosted server running both the Nok Nok Authentication Server (NNAS) and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway
 - NCCoE – the NCCoE lab, including several servers hosted in a vSphere environment running the IdPs and directory services that would correspond to PSFR organizations' infrastructure to support federated authentication to a service provider, like Motorola Solutions. An additional AS and some demonstration app back-ends are also hosted in the NCCoE lab for internal testing.
 - mobile devices connected to public cellular networks with the required client software to authenticate to, and access, Motorola Solutions back-end apps and the NCCoE Lab systems

248 The names of the Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) in the NCCoE lab are meant to depict different
249 organizations participating in an MSSO scheme:

- 250 ▪ SPSD – State Public Safety Department, a PSFR organization with a SAML IdP
- 251 ▪ LPSD – Local Public Safety Department, a PSFR organization with an OIDC IdP
- 252 ▪ CPSSP – Central Public Safety Service Provider, a Software as a Service (SaaS) provider serving
253 the PSFR organizations, analogous to Motorola Solutions

254 The fictitious *.mssso* top-level domain is simply a reference to the MSSO project. The demonstration apps
255 hosted in the CPSSP VLAN were used to initially test and validate the federation setups in the user
256 organization; this guide mainly focuses on the integration with the Motorola Solutions AS and app back-
257 end.

258 The arrows in Figure 1-1 depict traffic flows between the three different environments, to illustrate the
259 networking requirements for cross-organizational MSSO flows. This diagram does not depict traffic flows
260 within environments (e.g., between the IdPs and the Domain Controllers providing directory services).
261 The depicted traffic flows are described below:

- 262 ▪ Mobile device traffic – The PSX client apps on the device connect to the publicly-routable PSX
263 app servers in the Motorola Solutions cloud. The mobile browser also connects to the Motorola
264 Solutions AS, and, in the federated authentication scenarios, the browser is redirected to the
265 IdPs in the NCCoE Lab. The mobile devices use the Pulse Secure Virtual Private Network (VPN)
266 client to access internal lab services through Network Address Translation (NAT) addresses
267 established on the pfSense firewall. This enables the use of the internal lab Domain Name
268 System (DNS) server to resolve the hostnames under the *.mssso* top-level domain, which is not
269 actually registered in public DNS. To support UAF authentication at the lab-hosted OIDC IdP, the
270 Nok Nok Passport app on the devices also connects to the publicly routable NNAS instance
271 hosted in the Nok Nok Labs cloud environment.
- 272 ▪ Connection to Token Endpoint – The usage scenario where the Motorola Solutions AS redirects
273 the user to the OIDC IdP in the lab requires the AS to initiate an inbound connection to the IdP’s
274 Token Endpoint. To enable this, the PingFederate run-time port, 9031, is exposed via NAT
275 through the NIST firewall. Note that no inbound connection is required in the SAML IdP
276 integration, as the SAML web browser SSO does not require direct back-channel communication
277 between the AS and the IdP. SAML authentication requests and responses are transmitted
278 through browser redirects.
- 279 ▪ PingFederate plugin connection to Nok Nok Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) – To
280 support UAF authentication, the OIDC IdP includes a PingFederate adapter developed by Nok
281 Nok Labs that needs to connect to the APIs on the NNAS.

282 In a typical production deployment, the NNAS would not be directly exposed to the internet; instead,
 283 mobile client interactions with the Authentication Server APIs would traverse a reverse proxy server.
 284 Nok Nok Labs provided a cloud instance of their software as a matter of expedience in completing the
 285 lab build.

286 Additionally, the use of a VPN client on mobile devices is optional. Many organizations directly expose
 287 their IdPs to the public internet, though some organizations prefer to keep those services internal and
 288 use a VPN to access them. Organizations can decide this based on their risk tolerance, but this build
 289 architecture can function with or without a VPN client on the mobile devices.

290 1.2.3 General Infrastructure Requirements

291 Some general infrastructure elements must be in place to support the components of this build guide.
 292 These are assumed to exist in the environment prior to the installation of the architecture components
 293 in this guide. The details of how these services are implemented are not directly relevant to the build.

- 294 ▪ DNS – All server names are expected to be resolvable in DNS. This is especially important for
 295 FIDO functionality, as the application identification (App ID) associated with cryptographic keys
 296 is derived from the hostname used in app Uniform Resource Locators (URLs).
- 297 ▪ Network Time Protocol (NTP) – Time synchronization among servers is important. A clock
 298 difference of five minutes or more is sufficient to cause JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) Web
 299 Token (JWT) validation, for example, to fail. All servers should be configured to synchronize time
 300 with a reliable NTP source.
- 301 ▪ Certificate Authority (CA) – Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) connections should be
 302 used throughout the architecture. Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificates are required for all
 303 servers in the build. If an in-house CA is used to issue certificates, the root and any intermediate
 304 certificates must be provisioned to the trust stores in client mobile devices and servers.

305 1.3 Typographic Conventions

306 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/ Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	filenames and pathnames references to documents that are not hyperlinks, new terms, and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
Bold	names of menus, options, command buttons and fields	Choose File > Edit .

Typeface/ Symbol	Meaning	Example
Monospace	command-line input, on-screen computer output, sample code examples, status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
Monospace Bold	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<code>service sshd start</code>
blue text	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST’s National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence are available at https://nccoe.nist.gov

307 2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Device

308 This section covers all of the different aspects of installing and configuring the mobile device. There are
 309 several prerequisites and different components that need to work in tandem for the entire SSO
 310 architecture to work.

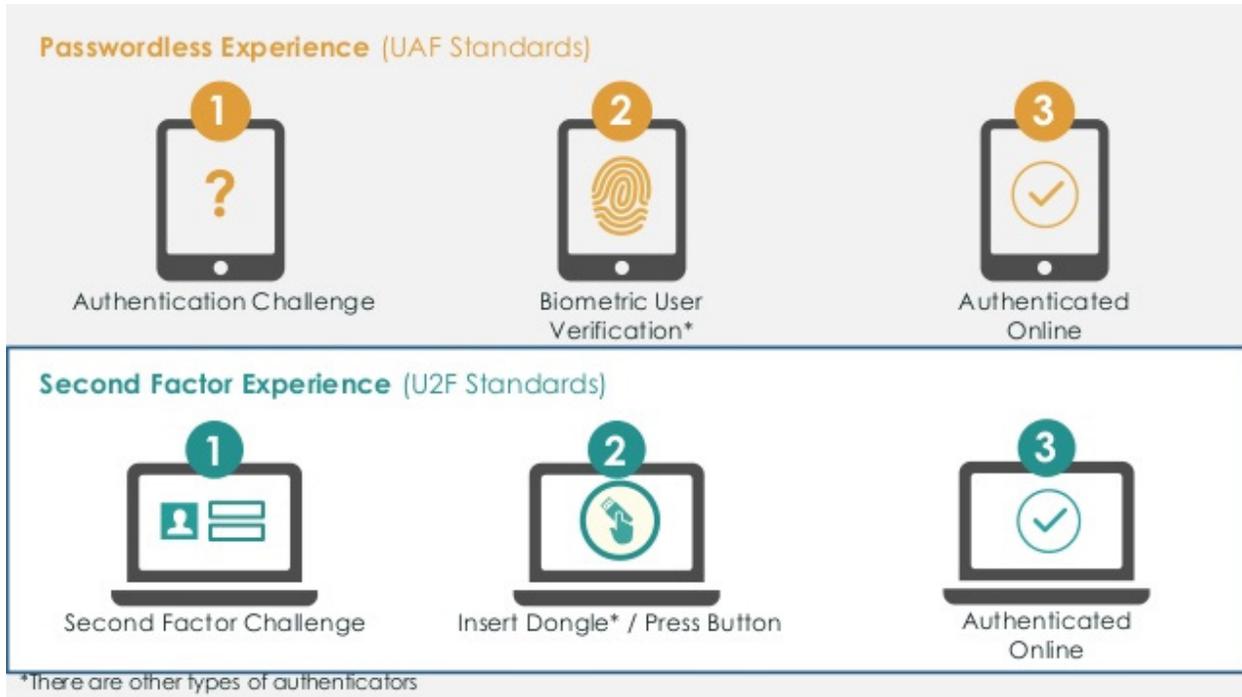
311 2.1 Platform and System Requirements

312 This section covers requirements for mobile devices—both hardware and software—for the SSO and
 313 FIDO authentication components of the architecture to work properly. The two dominant mobile
 314 platforms are Google’s Android and Apple’s iPhone operating system (iOS). The NCCoE reference
 315 architecture only tested Android devices and apps, but the same core architecture could support iOS.

316 First, for SSO support, the NCCoE reference architecture follows the guidance of the *OAuth 2.0 for*
 317 *Native Apps* Best Current Practice (BCP) [1]. That guidance, also known as *AppAuth*, requires that
 318 developers use an *external user-agent* (e.g., Google’s Chrome for Android web browser) instead of an
 319 *embedded user-agent* (e.g., an Android WebView) for their OAuth authorization requests. Because of
 320 this, the mobile platform must support the use of external user-agents.

321 Second, for FIDO support, this architecture optionally includes two different types of authenticators:
 322 UAF and U2F. The *FIDO Specifications Overview* presentation [2] explains the difference, as shown in
 323 Figure 2-1.

324 Figure 2-1 Comparison of UAF and U2F Standards



325

326 The following subsections address Android-specific requirements to support SSO and FIDO
 327 authentication.

328 2.1.1 Supporting SSO

329 While it is not strictly required, the BCP recommends that the device provide an external user-agent that
 330 supports “in-app browser tabs,” which Google describes as the *Android Custom Tab* feature. The
 331 following excerpt is from the AppAuth Android-specific guidance in Appendix B.2 of RFC 8252:

332 *Apps can initiate an authorization request in the browser without the user leaving the app,*
 333 *through the Android Custom Tab feature which implements the in-app browser tab pattern. The*
 334 *user's default browser can be used to handle requests when no browser supports Custom Tabs.*

335 *Android browser vendors should support the Custom Tabs protocol (by providing an*
 336 *implementation of the “CustomTabsService” class), to provide the in-app browser tab user*
 337 *experience optimization to their users. Chrome is one such browser that implements Custom*
 338 *Tabs.*

339 Any device manufacturer can support Custom Tabs in their Android browser. However, Google
 340 implemented this in its Chrome for Android web browser in September 2015 [3]. Because Chrome is not
 341 part of the operating system (OS) itself, but is downloaded from the Google Play Store, recent versions

342 of Chrome can be used on older versions of Android. In fact, the Chrome Developer website's page on
343 Chrome Custom Tabs [\[4\]](#) states that it can be used on Android Jelly Bean (4.1), which was released in
344 2012, and up.

345 To demonstrate SSO, the NCCoE reference architecture utilizes the Motorola Solutions PSX App Suite,
346 which requires Android Lollipop (5.0) or newer.

347 2.1.2 Supporting FIDO U2F

348 The device will need the following components for FIDO U2F:

- 349 ▪ a web browser capable of understanding a U2F challenge request from an IdP
- 350 ▪ a FIDO U2F client app capable of handling the challenge
- 351 ▪ Near Field Communication (NFC) hardware support

352 Chrome for Android [\[5\]](#) is a browser that understands U2F challenge requests, and Google Authenticator
353 [\[6\]](#) (works on Android Gingerbread [2.3.3] and up) is an app capable of handling the challenge. If NFC is
354 unavailable, Bluetooth and Universal Serial Bus Type-C (USB-C) are also options for connecting U2F
355 tokens. Google has added support for both options into their Play Services framework, as of November
356 2017. However, these other methods are less widely used and are not a focus of this guide.

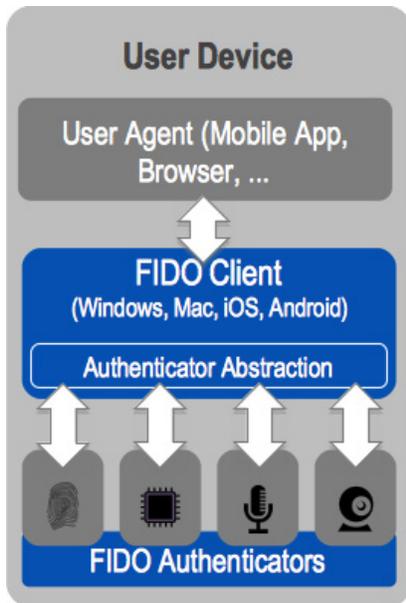
357 2.1.3 Supporting FIDO UAF

358 The device will need the following components for FIDO UAF:

- 359 ▪ a web browser
- 360 ▪ a FIDO UAF client app capable of handling the challenge
- 361 ▪ a FIDO UAF authenticator

362 These components are pictured in Figure 2-2, which is from the *FIDO UAF Architectural Overview* [\[7\]](#).

363 Figure 2-2 FIDO UAF Architectural Overview



364

365 While the overview refers to the last two components (client and authenticator) as separate
 366 components, these components can—and often do—come packaged in a single app. The NCCoE
 367 reference architecture utilizes the Nok Nok Passport [\[8\]](#) app to provide these two components. In
 368 addition to the apps, the device will need to provide some hardware component to support the FIDO
 369 UAF authenticator. For example, for biometric-based FIDO UAF authenticators, a camera would be
 370 needed to support face or iris scanning, a microphone would be needed to support voiceprints, and a
 371 fingerprint sensor would be needed to support fingerprint biometrics. Of course, if a Personal
 372 Identification Number (PIN) authenticator is used, a specific hardware sensor is not required. Beyond
 373 the actual input method of the FIDO UAF factor, additional (optional) hardware considerations for a UAF
 374 authenticator include secure key storage for registered FIDO key pairs, storage of biometric templates,
 375 and execution of matching functions (e.g., within dedicated hardware or on processor trusted execution
 376 environments [TEE]).

377 2.2 How to Install and Configure the Mobile Apps

378 This section covers the installation and configuration of the mobile apps needed for various components
 379 of the reference architecture: SSO, FIDO U2F, and FIDO UAF.

380 2.2.1 How to Install and Configure SSO-Enabled Apps

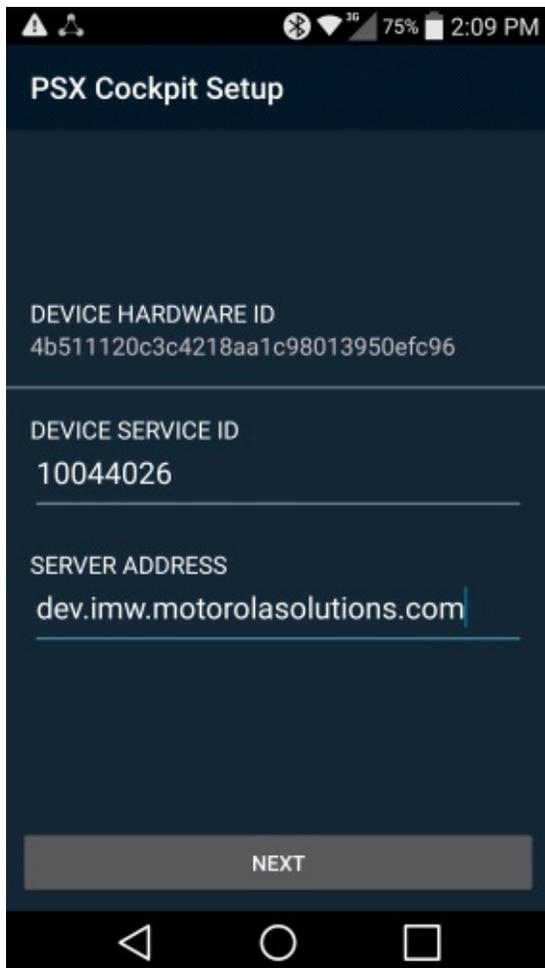
381 For SSO-enabled apps, there is no universal set of installation and configuration procedures; these will
 382 vary depending on the design choices of the app manufacturer. The NCCoE reference architecture uses
 383 the *Motorola Solutions PSX App Suite* [\[9\]](#) Version 5.4. This set of mobile apps provides several

384 capabilities for the public safety community. Our setup consisted of three apps: *PSX Messenger* for text,
385 photo, and video communication; *PSX Mapping* for shared location awareness; and *PSX Cockpit* to
386 centralize authentication and identity information across the other apps. These apps cannot be obtained
387 from a public venue (e.g., the Google Play Store); rather, the binaries must be obtained from Motorola
388 Solutions and installed via other means, such as a Mobile Device Management (MDM) solution or
389 private app store.

390 2.2.1.1 *Configuring the PSX Cockpit App*

391 1. Open the Cockpit app. Your screen should look like Figure 2-3.

392 **Figure 2-3 PSX Cockpit Setup**



393
394 2. For **DEVICE SERVICE ID**, select a Device Service ID in the range given to you by your
395 administrator. Note that these details would be provided by Motorola Solutions if you are using

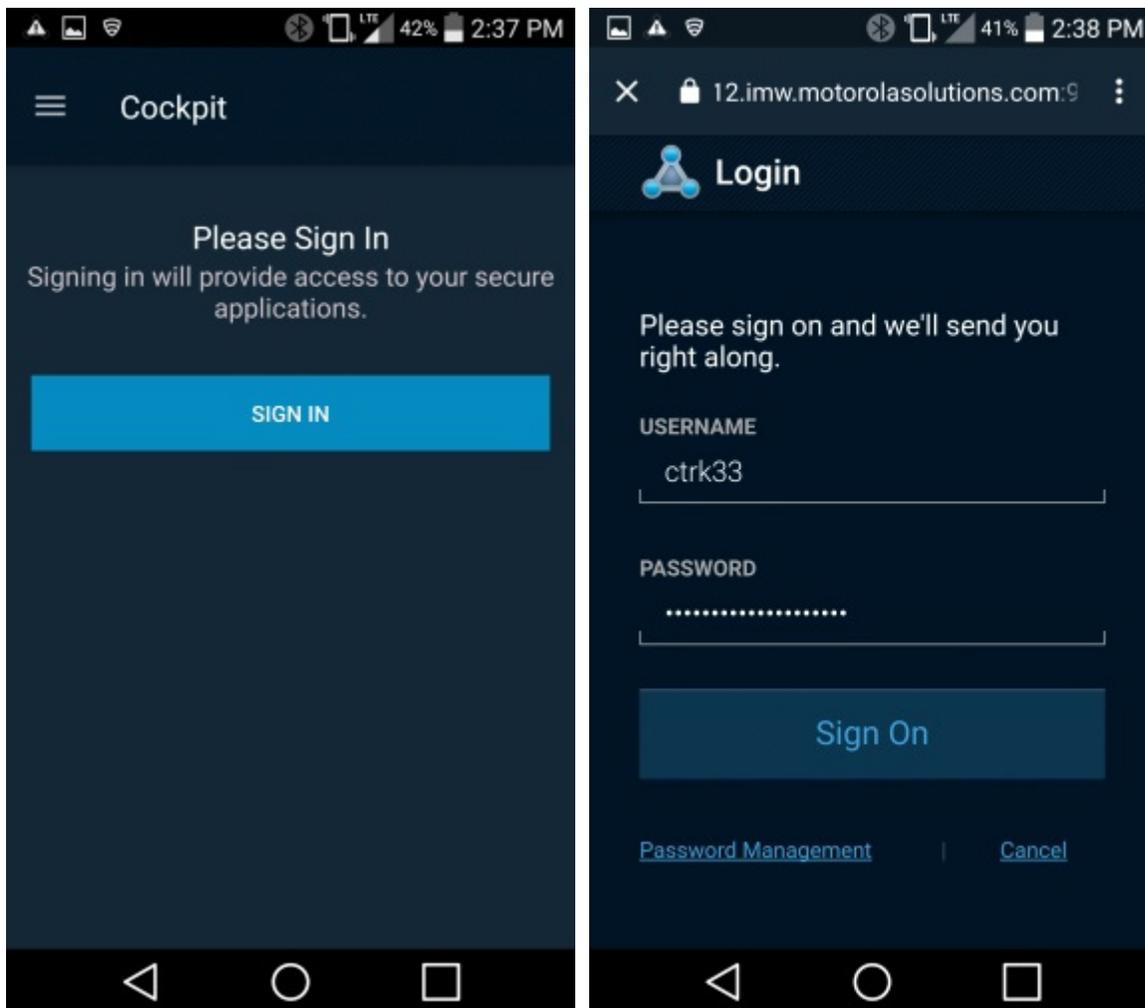
396 their service offering, or by your administrator if you are hosting the PSX app servers in your
397 own environment. Each device should be configured with a unique Device Service ID
398 corresponding to the username from the username range. For example, the NCCoE lab used a
399 Device Service ID of “22400” to correspond to a username of “2400.”

400 3. For **SERVER ADDRESS**, use the Server Address given to you by your administrator. For example,
401 the NCCoE lab used a Server Address of “uns5455.imw.motorolasolutions.com.”

402 4. If a **Use SUPL APN** checkbox appears, leave it unchecked.

403 5. Tap **NEXT**. Your screen should look like Figure 2-4.

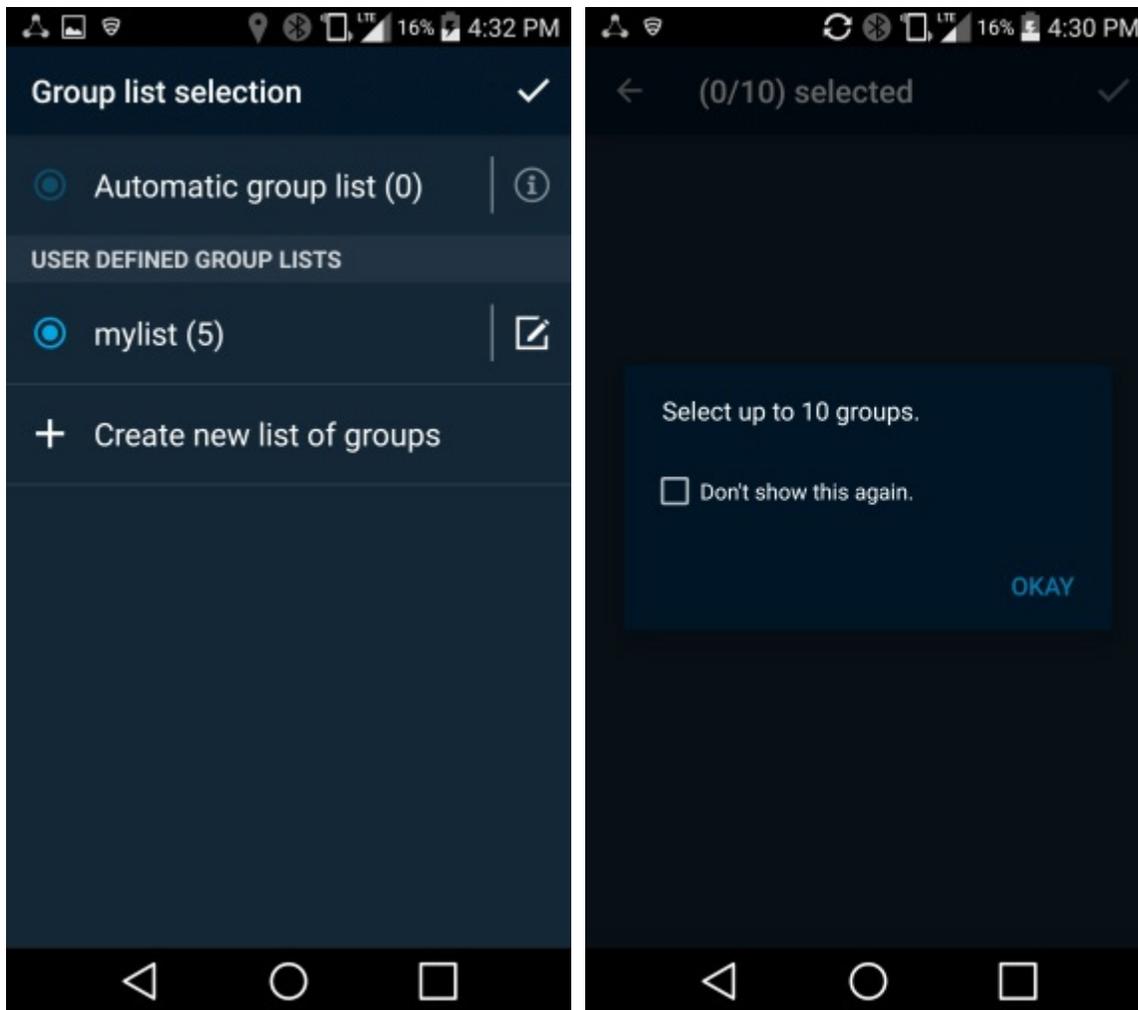
404 Figure 2-4 PSX Cockpit Setup, Continued



405
406 6. Tap **SIGN IN**.

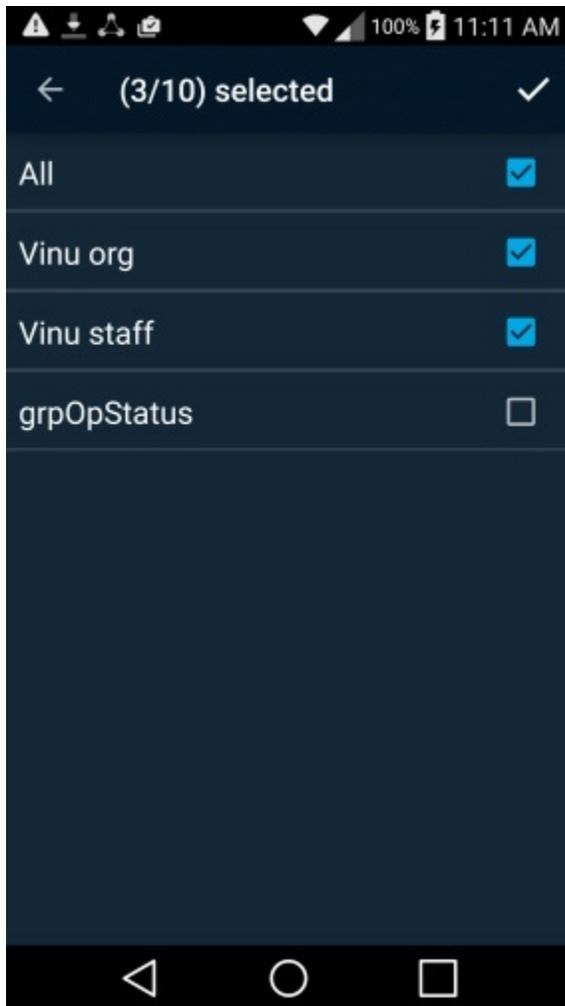
- 407 7. Log in with the authentication procedure determined by the AS and IdP policies. Note that if
408 UAF is used, a FIDO UAF authenticator must be enrolled before this step can be completed. See
409 [Section 2.2.3](#) for details on FIDO UAF enrollment. After you log in, your screen should look like
410 Figure 2-5.

411 Figure 2-5 PSX Cockpit Group List Selection



- 412
- 413 8. Tap **Create new list of groups**. This is used to select which organizationally-defined groups of
414 users you can receive data updates for in the other PSX apps.
- 415 9. Tap **OKAY**. Your screen should look like Figure 2-6.

416 Figure 2-6 PSX Cockpit Groups

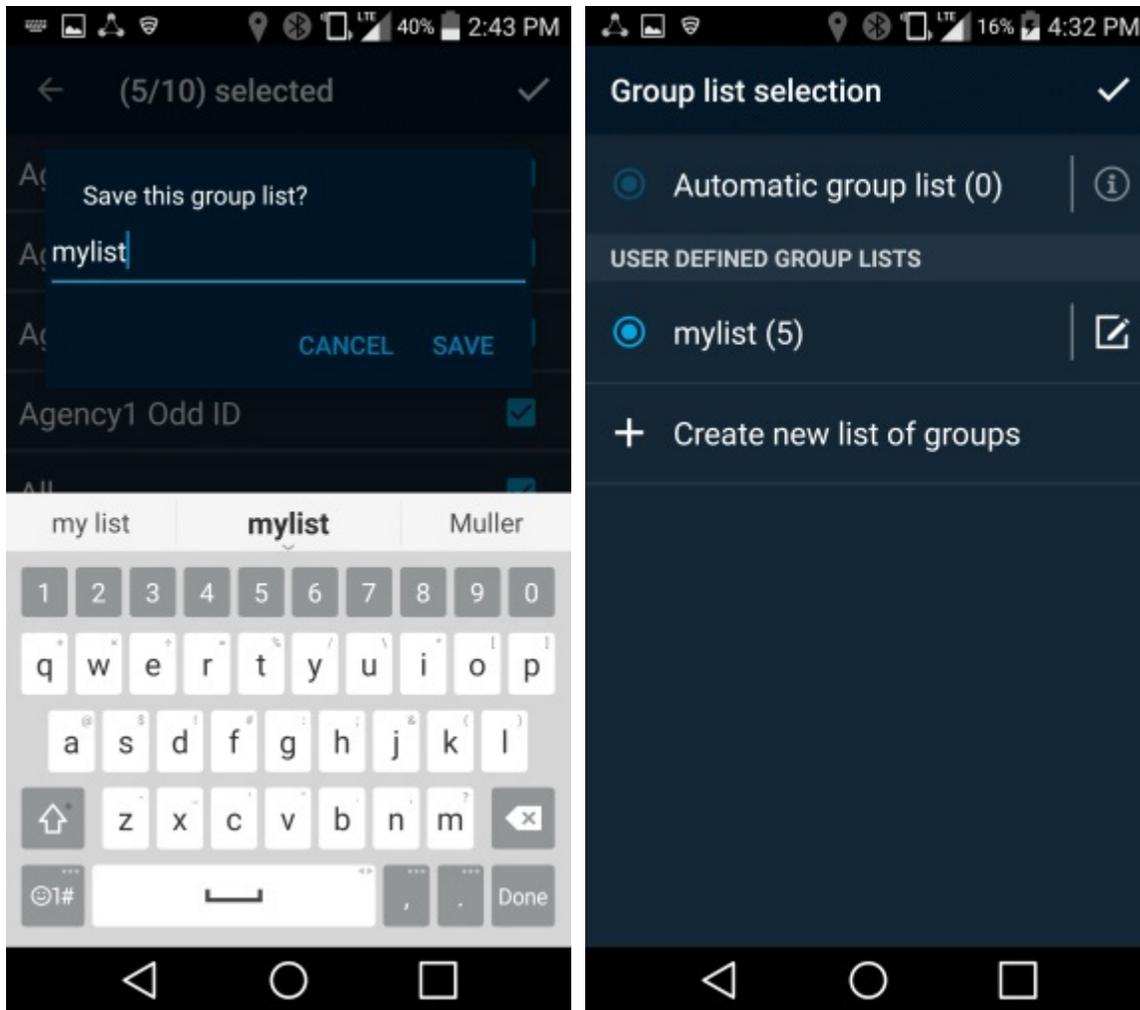


417

418 10. Check the checkboxes for the groups that you wish to use. Note that it may take a short time for
419 the groups to appear.

420 11. Tap on the upper-right checkmark. Your screen should look like Figure 2-7.

421 Figure 2-7 PSX Cockpit Group List Setup Complete

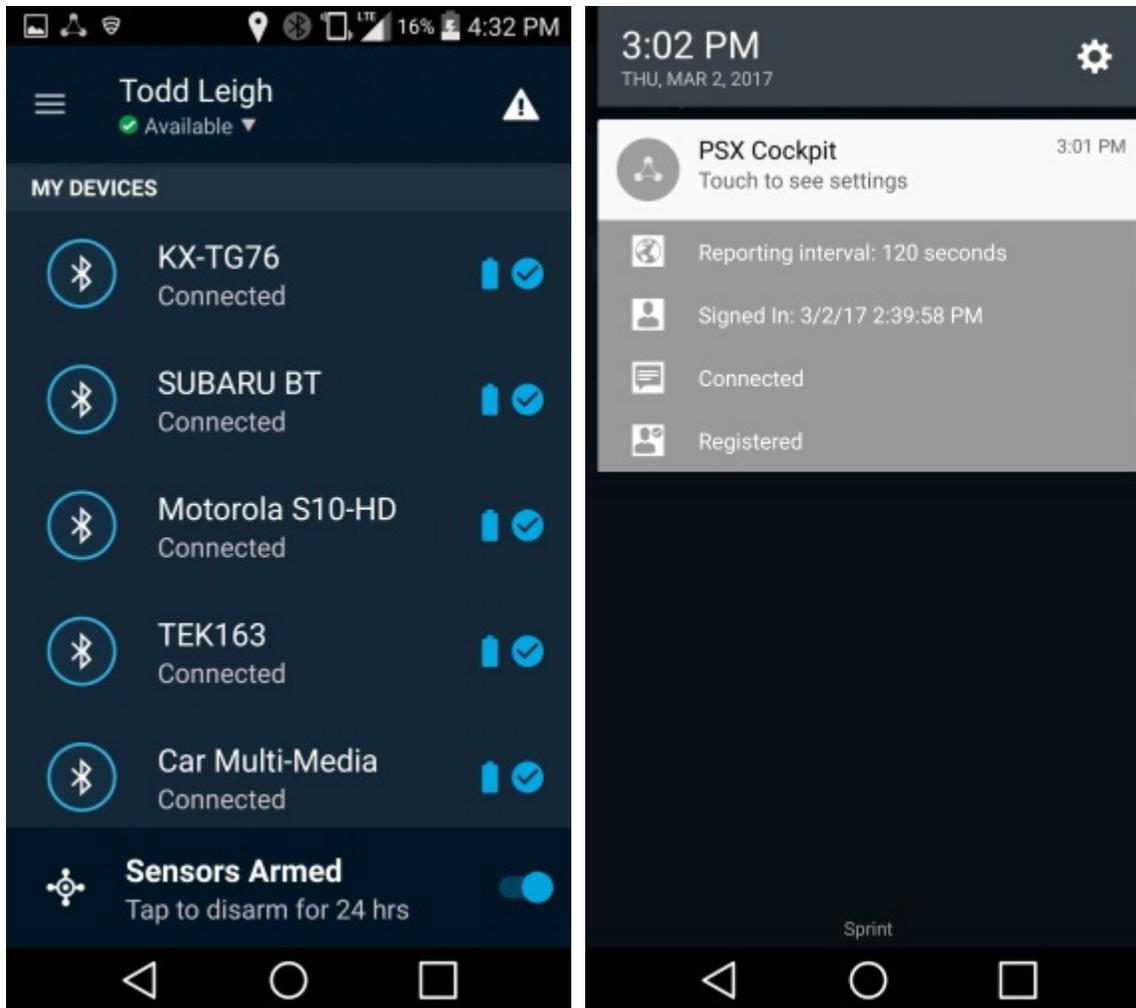


422

423 12. Enter a group list name (e.g., "mylist"), and tap **SAVE**.

424 13. Tap the upper-right checkmark to select the list. Your screen should look like Figure 2-8.

425 Figure 2-8 PSX Cockpit User Interface



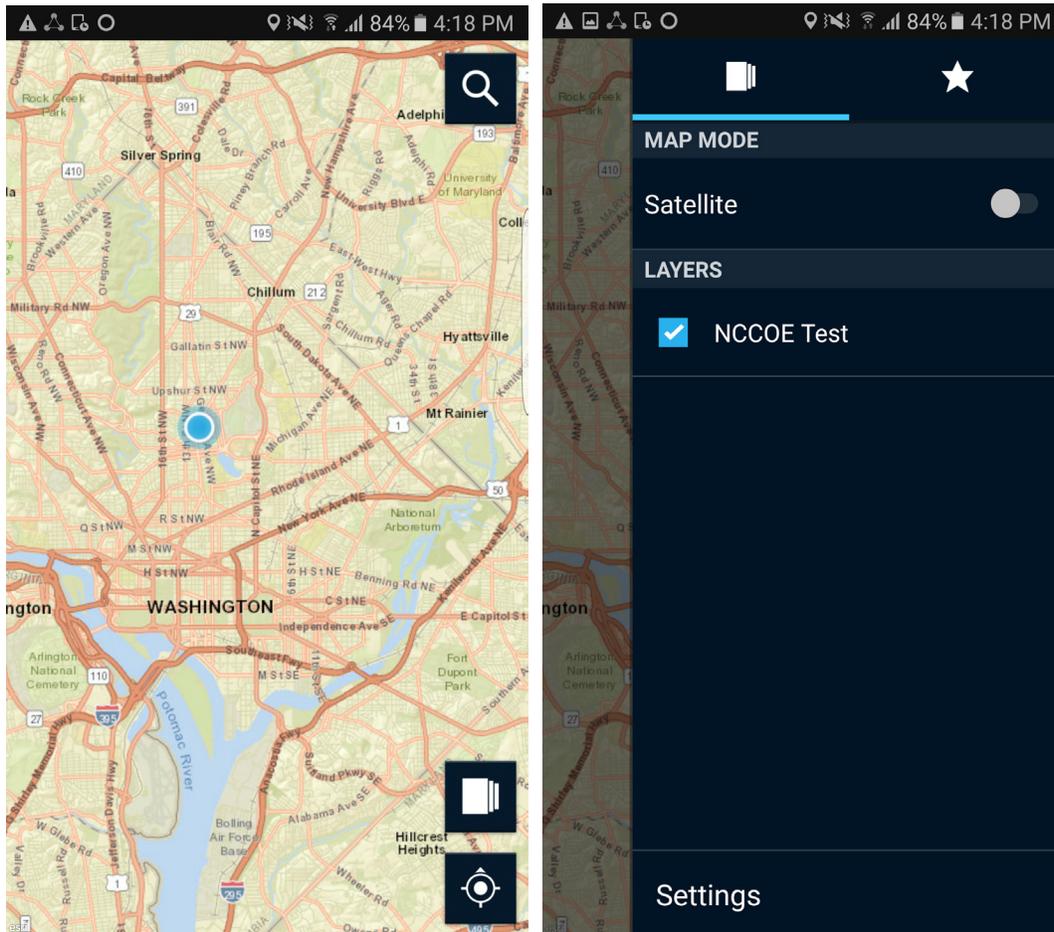
426

- 427 14. On the Cockpit screen, you can trigger an emergency (triangle icon in the upper right); set your
 428 status (drop-down menu under your name); or reselect roles and groups, see configuration, and
 429 sign off (hamburger menu to the left of your name, and then tap **username**).
- 430 15. If you pull down your notifications, you should see icons and text indicating “Reporting interval:
 431 120 seconds,” “Signed In: <date> <time>,” “Connected,” and “Registered.”

432 *2.2.1.2 Configuring the PSX Mapping App*

433 1. Open the Mapping app. You should see the screen shown in Figure 2-9.

434 **Figure 2-9 PSX Mapping User Interface**

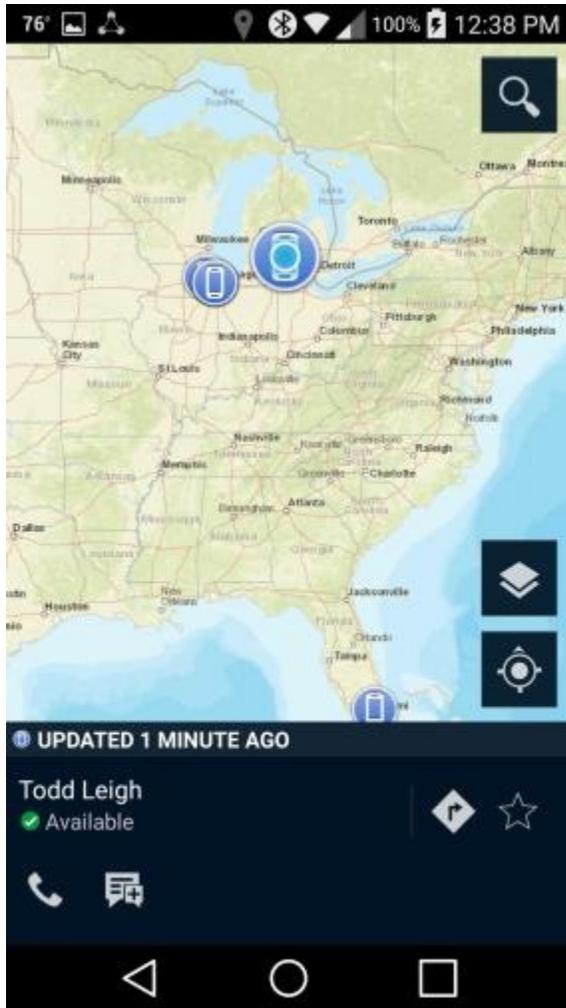


435

436 2. Select the “Layers” icon in the lower-right corner. Group names should appear under **Layers**.

437 3. Select a group. Your screen should look like Figure 2-10.

438 Figure 2-10 PSX Mapping Group Member Information

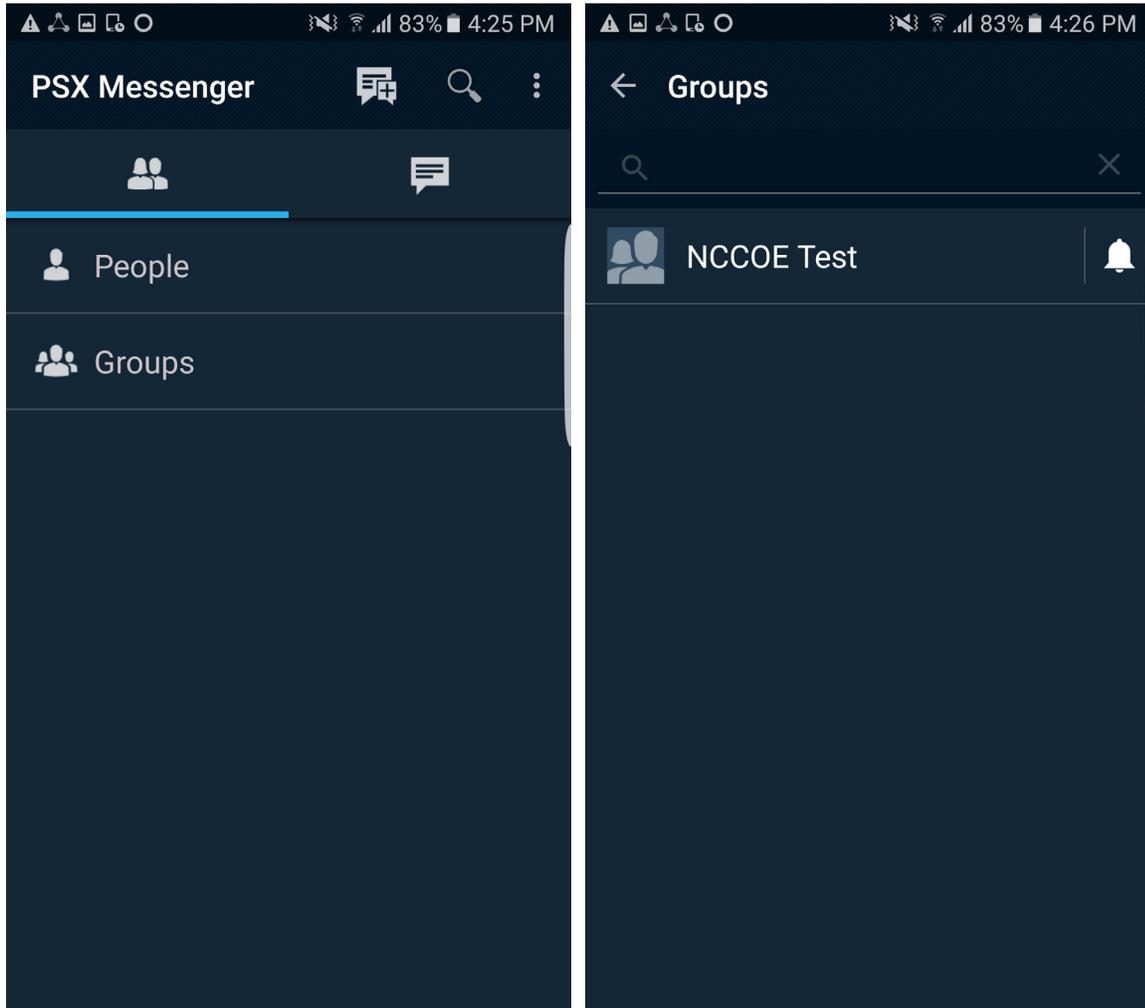


- 439
- 440 4. The locations of the devices that are members of that group should appear as dots on the map.
- 441 5. Select a device. A pop-up will show the user of the device, and icons for phoning and messaging
- 442 that user.
- 443 6. Selecting the “Messenger” icon for the selected user will take you to the Messenger app, where
- 444 you can send a message to the user.

445 *2.2.1.3 Configuring the PSX Messenger App*

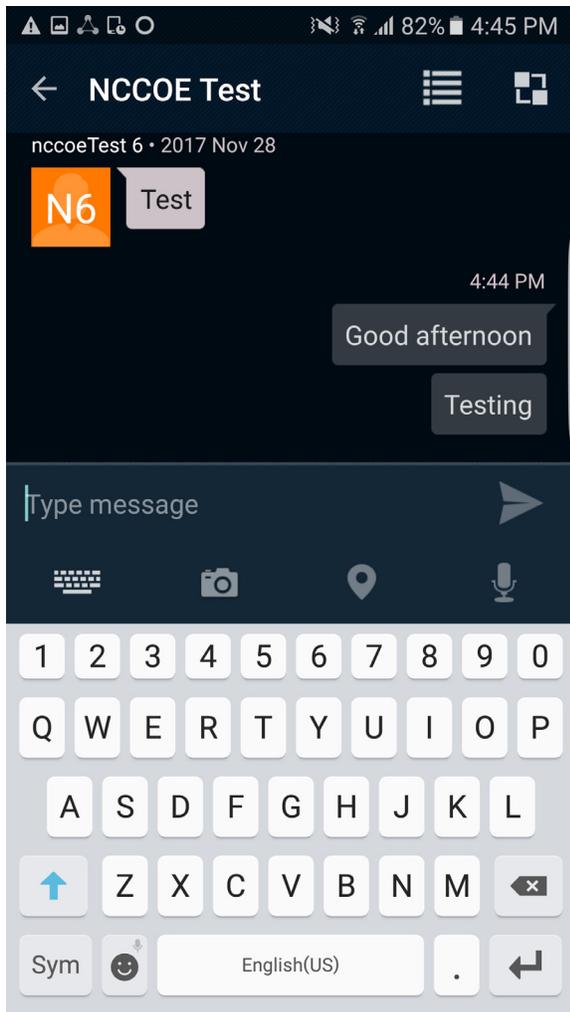
446 1. Open the Messenger app. Your screen should look like Figure 2-11.

447 **Figure 2-11 PSX Messenger User Interface**



- 448
- 449 2. Your screen should show **People** and **Groups**. Select one of them.
- 450 3. A list of people or groups that you can send a message to should appear. Select one of them.
- 451 Your screen should look like Figure 2-12.

452 Figure 2-12 PSX Messenger Messages



453

454 4. You are now viewing the messaging window. You can type text for a message, and attach a
455 picture, video, voice recording, or map.

456 5. Tap the “Send” icon. The message should appear on your screen.

457 6. Tap the “Pivot” icon in the upper-right corner of the message window. Select “Locate,” and you
458 will be taken to the Mapping app with the location of the people or group you selected.

459 2.2.2 How to Install and Configure a FIDO U2F Authenticator

460 This section covers the installation and usage of a FIDO U2F authenticator on the mobile device. The
461 NCCoE reference architecture utilizes the Google Authenticator app on the mobile device, and a Yubico
462 YubiKey NEO as a hardware token. The app functions as the client-side U2F authenticator and is
463 available on Google's Play Store [\[6\]](#).

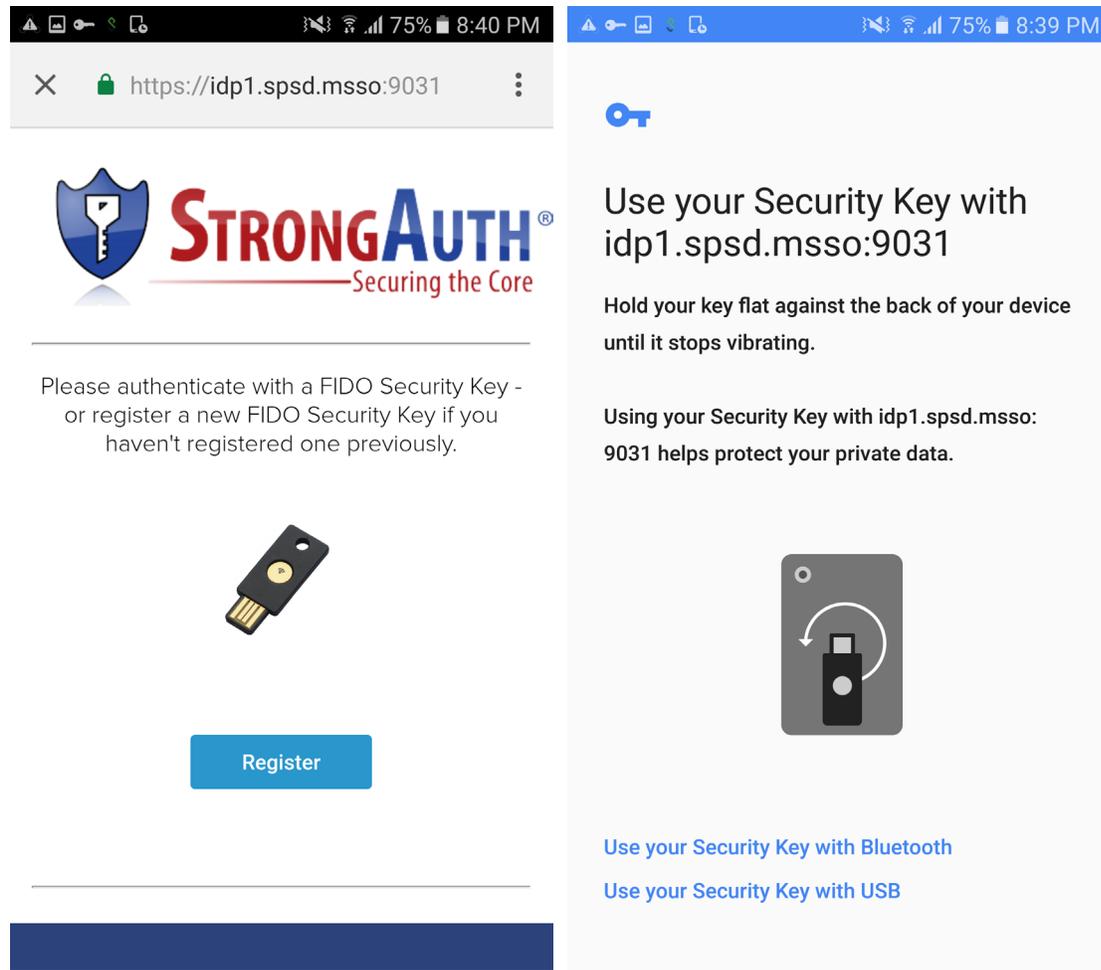
464 2.2.2.1 Installing Google Authenticator

- 465 1. On your Android device, open the Play Store app.
- 466 2. Search for "Google Authenticator," and install the app. There is no configuration needed until
467 you are ready to register a FIDO U2F token with a StrongAuth server.

468 2.2.2.2 Registering the Token

469 In the architecture that is laid out in this practice guide, there is no out-of-band process to register the
470 user's U2F token. This takes place the first time the user tries to log in with whatever SSO-enabled app
471 they are using. For instance, when using the PSX Cockpit app, once the user tries to sign into an IdP that
472 has U2F enabled and has successfully authenticated with a username and password, they will be
473 presented with the screen shown in Figure 2-13.

474 Figure 2-13 FIDO U2F Registration



475

476 Because the user has never registered a U2F token, that is the only option the user sees.

- 477 1. Click **Register**, and the web page will activate the Google Authenticator app, which asks you to
 478 use a U2F token to continue (Figure 2-13 above).
- 479 2. Hold the U2F token to your device, and then the token will be registered to your account and
 480 you will be redirected to the U2F login screen again.

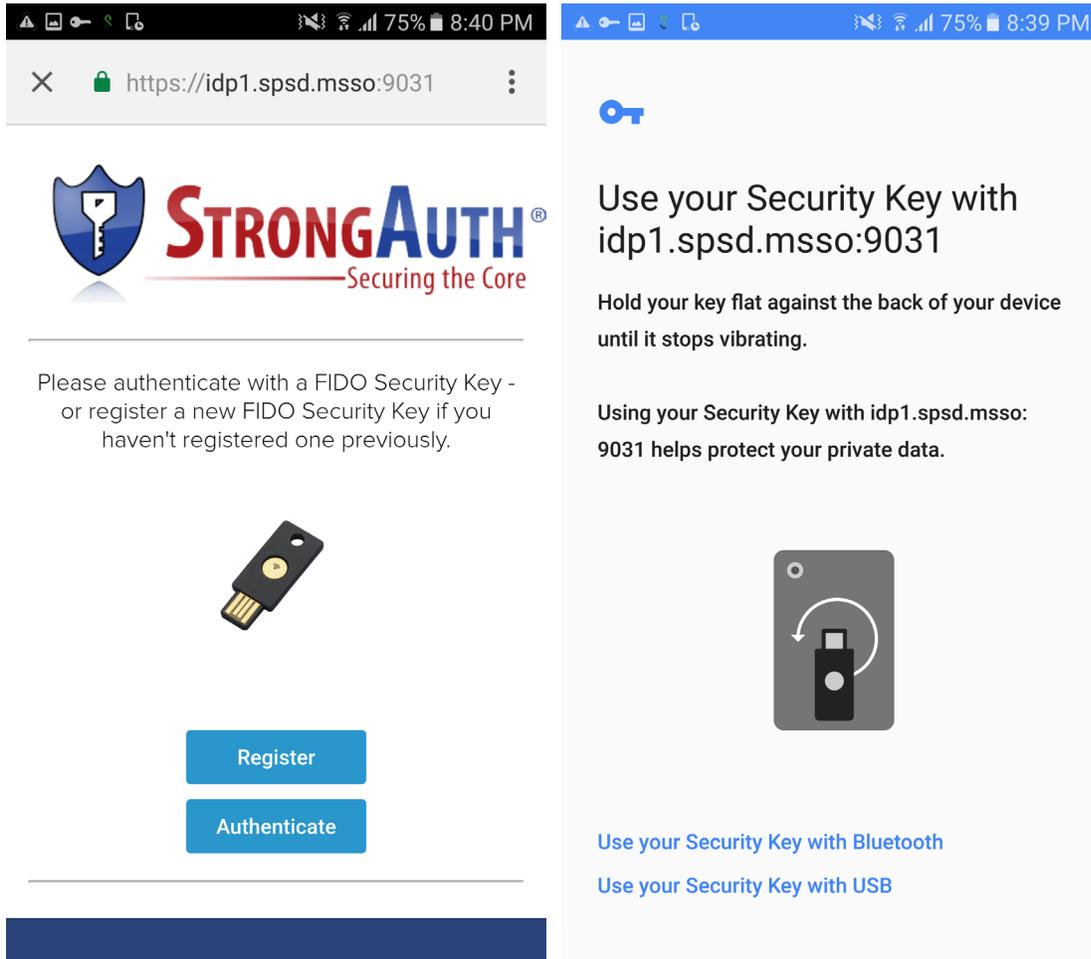
481 2.2.2.3 Authenticating with the Token

482 Now, because the system has a U2F token on file for the user, the user has the option to authenticate.

- 483 1. Click **Authenticate** (Figure 2-14), and the Google Authenticator app will be activated once more.

- 484 2. Hold the U2F token to your device, and then the authentication will be successful and the SSO
485 flow will continue.

486 **Figure 2-14 FIDO U2F Authentication**



487

488 2.2.3 How to Install and Configure a FIDO UAF Client

489 This section covers the installation and usage of a FIDO UAF client on the mobile device. Any FIDO UAF
490 client can be used, but the NCCoE reference architecture utilizes the Nok Nok Passport app (hereafter
491 referred to as "Passport"). The Passport app functions as the client-side UAF app and is available on
492 Google's Play Store [8]. The following excerpt is from the Play Store page:

493 *Passport from Nok Nok Labs is an authentication app that supports the Universal Authentication*
494 *Framework (UAF) protocol from the FIDO Alliance (www.fidoalliance.org).*

495 *Passport allows you to use out-of-band authentication to authenticate to selected websites on a*
496 *laptop or desktop computer. You can use the fingerprint sensor on FIDO UAF-enabled devices*
497 *(such as the Samsung Galaxy S® 6, Fujitsu Arrows NX, or Sharp Aquos Zeta) or enter a simple PIN*
498 *on non-FIDO enabled devices. You can enroll your Android device by using Passport to scan a QR*
499 *code displayed by the website, then touch the fingerprint sensor or enter a PIN. Once enrolled,*
500 *you can authenticate using a similar method. Alternatively, the website can send a push*
501 *notification to your Android device and trigger the authentication.*

502 *This solution lets you use your Android device to better protect your online account, without*
503 *requiring passwords or additional hardware tokens.*

504 In our reference architecture, we use a Quick Response (QR) code to enroll the device onto Nok Nok
505 Labs’ test server.

506 *2.2.3.1 Installing Passport*

- 507 1. On your Android device, open the Play Store app.
- 508 2. Search for “Nok Nok Passport”, and install the app. There is no configuration needed until you
509 are ready to enroll the device with a Nok Nok Labs server.

510 Normally, the user will never need to open the Passport app during authentication; it will automatically
511 be invoked by the SSO-enabled app (e.g., PSX Cockpit). Instead of entering a username and password
512 into a Chrome Custom Tab, the user will be presented with the Passport screen to use the user’s UAF
513 credential.

514 *2.2.3.2 Enrolling the Device*

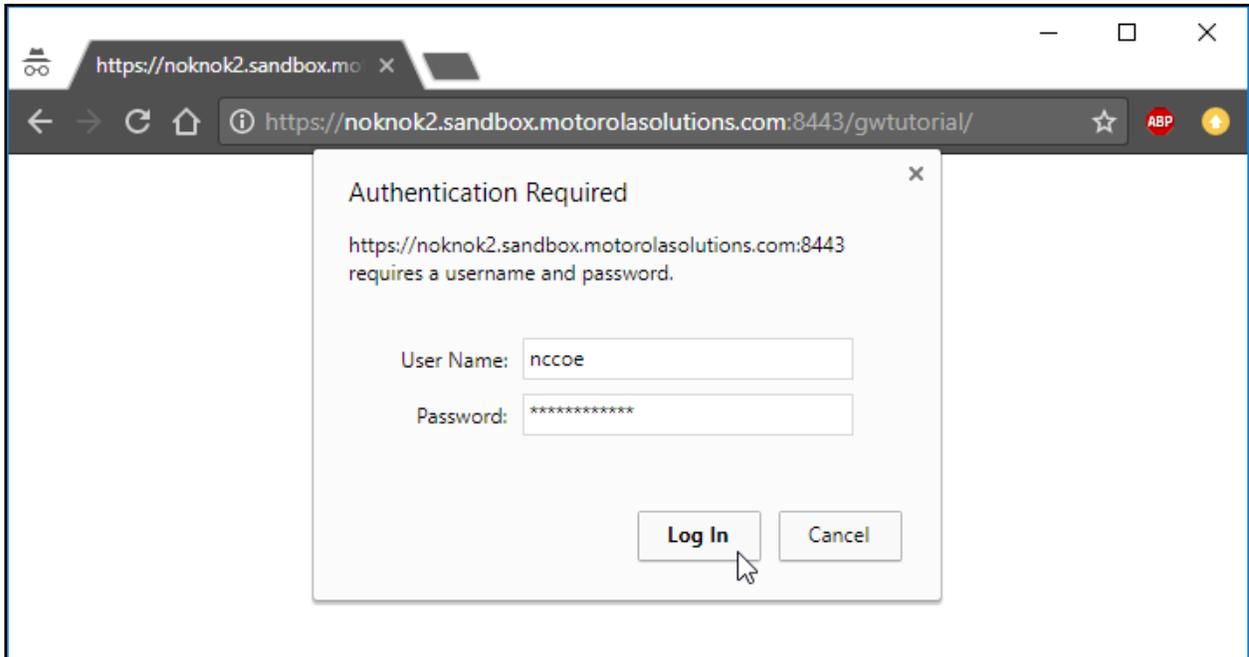
515 This section details the steps to enroll a device to an NNAS. First, you need a device that has Passport
516 installed. Second, you need to use another computer (preferably a desktop or laptop) to interact with
517 your NNAS web interface.

518 *Note: Users are not authenticated during registration. We are using the “tutorial” app provided with the*
519 *NNAS. This sample implementation does not meet the FIDO requirement of authentication prior to*
520 *registration. The production version of the NNAS may require additional steps and may have a different*
521 *interface.*

522 Screenshots that demonstrate the enrollment process are shown in Figure 2-15 through Figure 2-21.

- 523 1. First, use your computer to navigate to the NNAS web interface. You will be prompted for a
524 username and password; enter your administrator credentials, and click **Log In** (Figure 2-15).

525 Figure 2-15 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial App Authentication

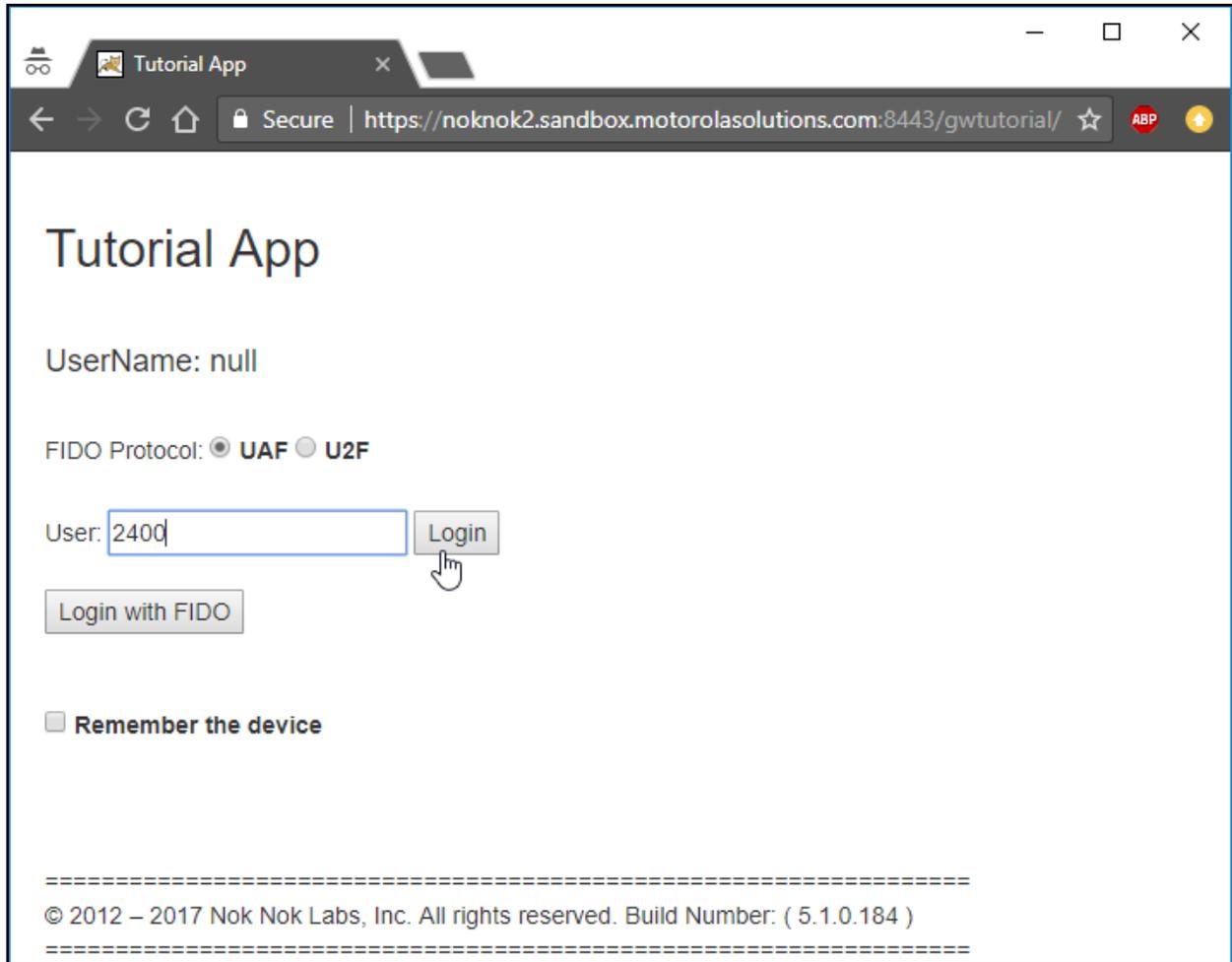


526

- 527 2. Once you have logged into the NNAS as an administrator, you need to identify which user you
528 want to manage. Enter the username, and click **Login with FIDO** (Figure 2-16).

529 *Note: As stated above, this is the tutorial app, so it only prompts for a username, not a*
530 *password. A production environment would require user authentication.*

531 Figure 2-16 Nok Nok Labs Tutorial App Login



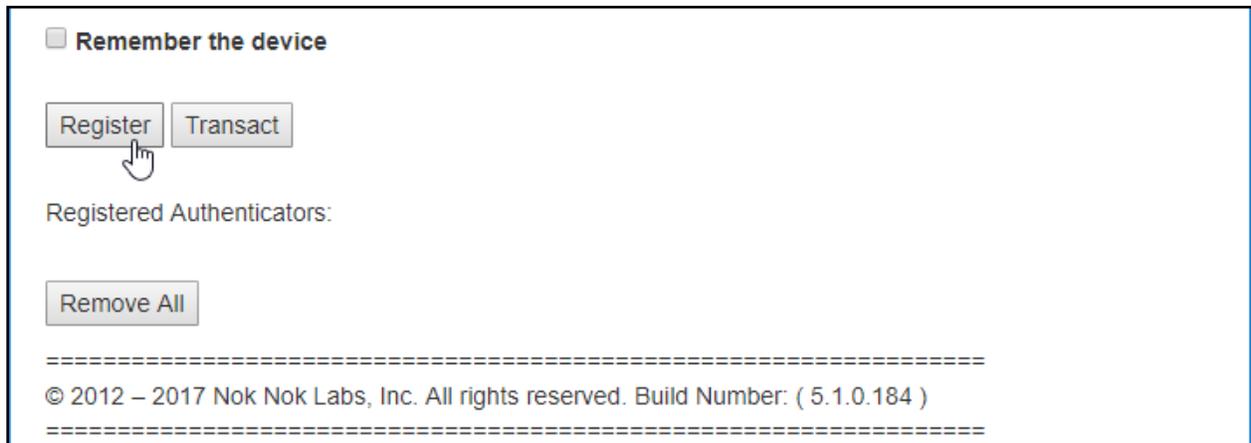
532

533

534

3. Once you have selected the user, you will need to start the FIDO UAF registration process. To begin, click **Register** (Figure 2-17).

535 **Figure 2-17 FIDO UAF Registration Interface**



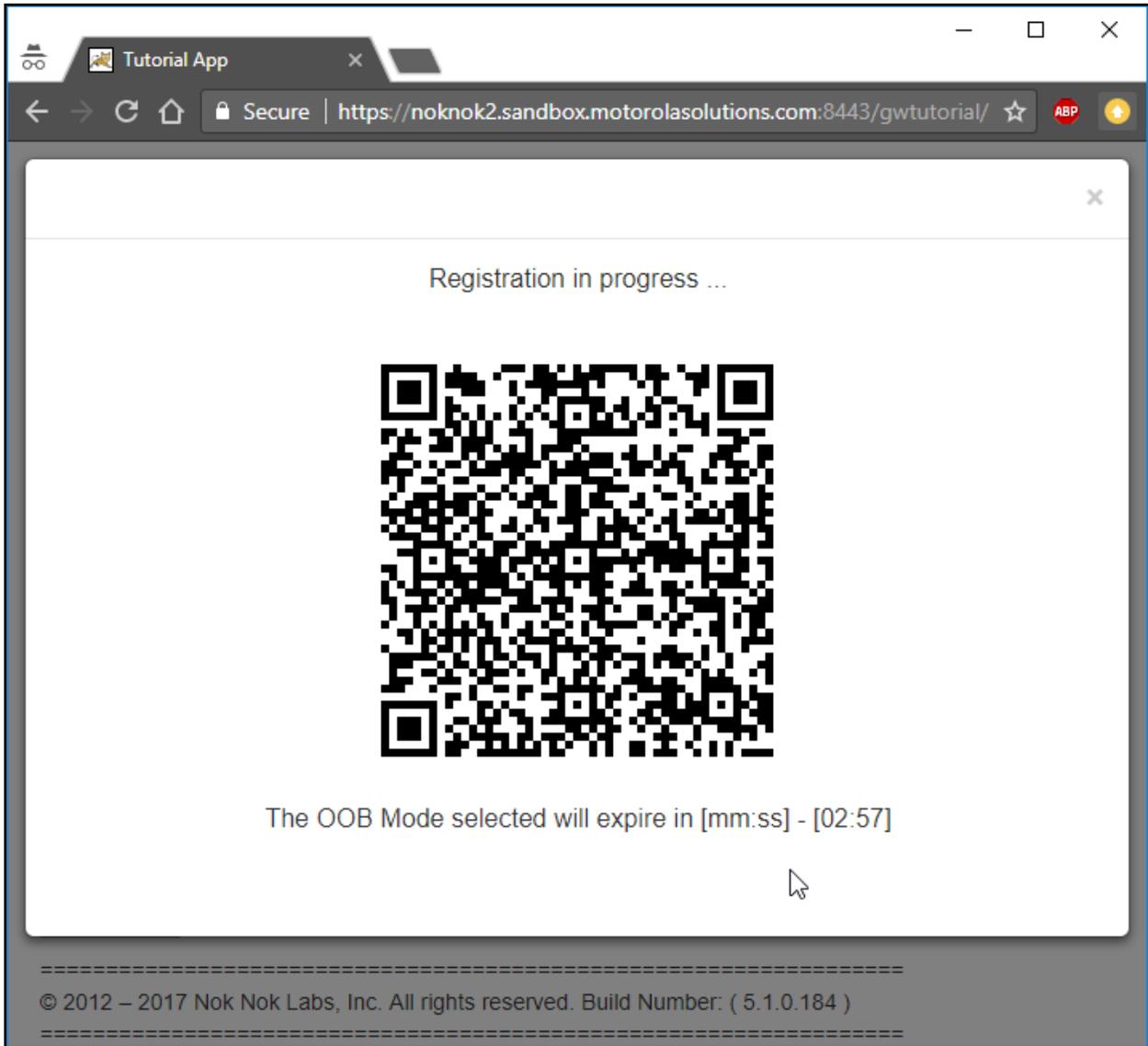
536

537 4. You will see a window with a QR code and a countdown (Figure 2-18). You have three minutes
538 to finish the registration process with your device.

539 a. Once the QR image appears, launch the Passport app on the phone. The Passport app
540 activates the device camera to enable capturing the QR code by centering the code in
541 the square frame in the middle of the screen (Figure 2-19).

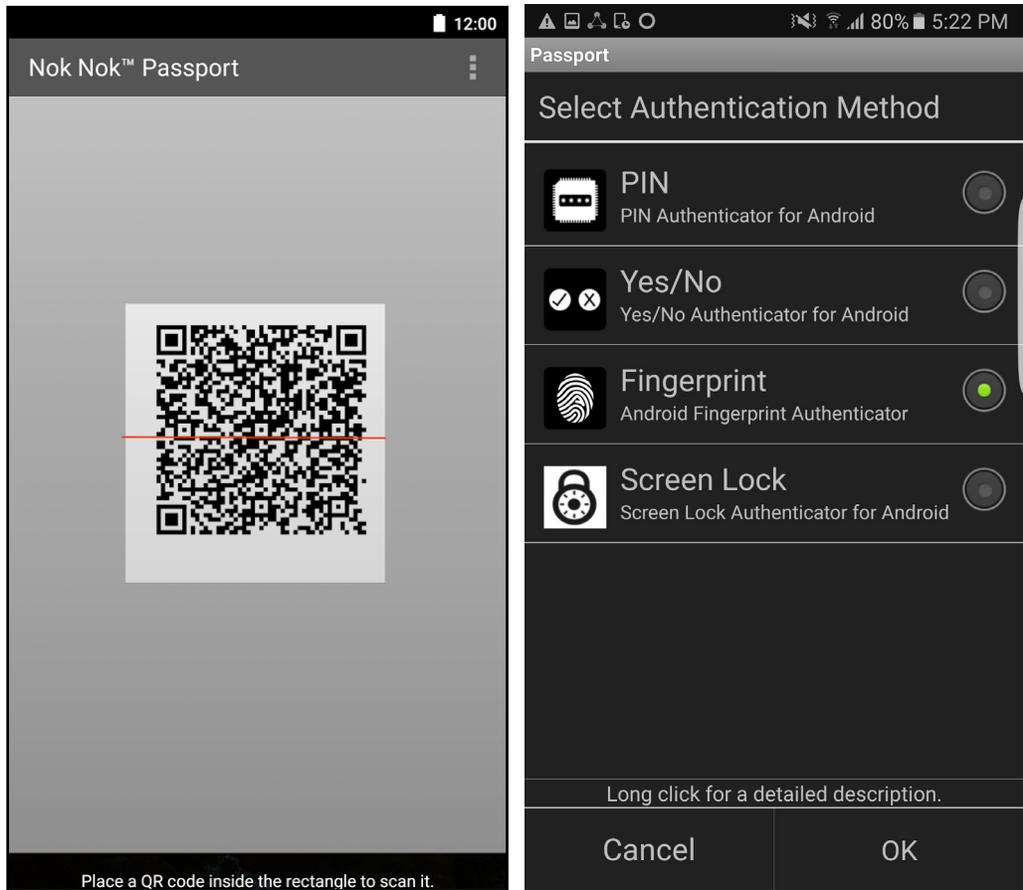
542 b. Once the QR code is scanned, the app prompts the user to select the type of verification
543 (fingerprint, PIN, etc.) to use (Figure 2-19). The selections may vary based on the au-
544 thenticator modules installed on the device.

545 Figure 2-18 FIDO UAF Registration QR Code



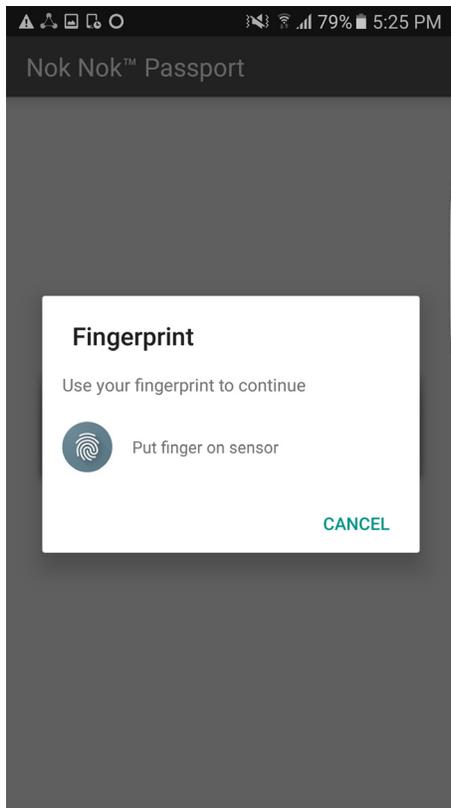
546

547 **Figure 2-19 FIDO UAF Registration Device Flow**



- 548
- 549
- 550
- 551
- 552
5. In this example, a fingerprint authenticator is registered. The user is prompted for a fingerprint scan to complete registration (Figure 2-20). The fingerprint authenticator uses a fingerprint previously registered in the Android screen-lock settings. If a PIN authenticator were registered, the user would be prompted to set a PIN instead.

553 **Figure 2-20 FIDO UAF Fingerprint Authenticator**



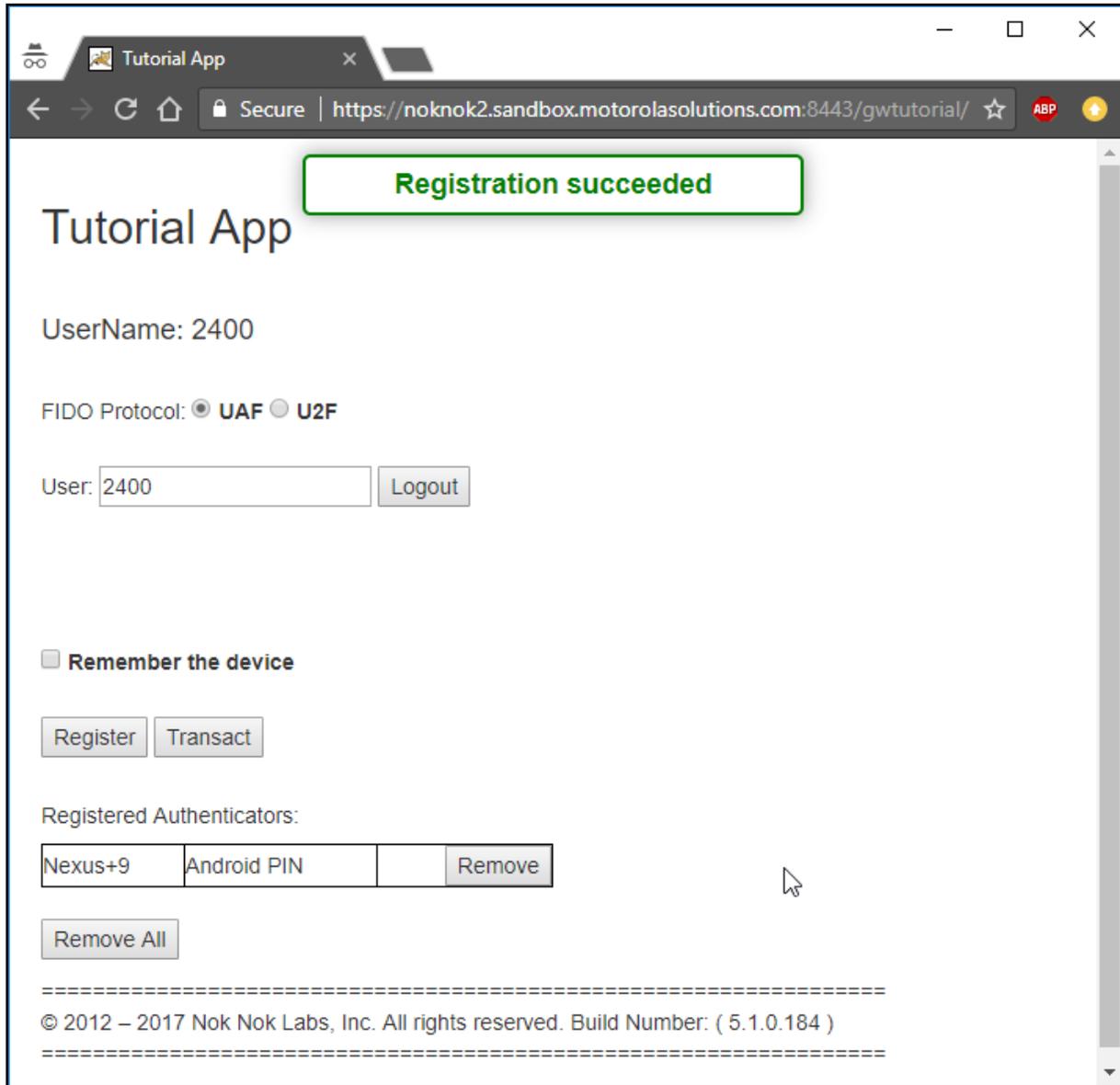
554

555

556

6. If the fingerprint scan matches the user's registered fingerprint, then a new UAF key pair is generated, the public key is sent to the server, and registration is completed (Figure 2-21).

557 Figure 2-21 FIDO UAF Registration Success



558

559 2.3 How App Developers Must Integrate AppAuth for SSO

560 App developers can easily integrate AppAuth to add SSO capabilities to their app. The first step to doing
561 this is reading through the AppAuth for Android documentation on GitHub [\[10\]](#). After doing so, an app
562 developer can begin the integration of AppAuth. The degree of this integration can vary—for instance,

563 you may choose to utilize user attributes to personalize the user's app experience. Each separate step
564 will be displayed here.

565 *Note: In this example, we use Android Studio 3.0, Android Software Development Kit (SDK) 25, and*
566 *Gradle 2.14.1. In addition, before beginning this, you must register your app with your AS and obtain a*
567 *client ID, which will be needed in [Section 2.3.4](#).*

568 2.3.1 Adding the Library Dependency

569 1. Edit your app's *build.gradle* file, and add this line to its dependencies (note that the AppAuth
570 library will most likely be updated in the future, so you should use the most recent version for
571 your dependency, not necessarily the one in this document):

```
572 =====
573 dependencies {
574     ...
575     compile 'net.openid:appauth:0.7.0'
576 }
577 =====
```

578 2.3.2 Adding Activities to the Manifest

579 1. First, you need to identify your AS's hostname, OAuth redirect path, and what scheme was set
580 when you registered your app. The scheme here is contrived, but it is common practice to use
581 reverse DNS style names; you should choose whatever aligns with your organization's common
582 practices. Another alternative to custom schemes is to use App Links.

583 2. Edit your *AndroidManifest.xml* file, and add these lines:

```
584 =====
585 <manifest xmlns:android="http://schemas.android.com/apk/res/android"
586     xmlns:tools="http://schemas.android.com/tools"
587     package="com.example.app">
588     ...
589     <activity
590         android:name="net.openid.appauth.RedirectUriReceiverActivity"
591         tools:node="replace">
592         <intent-filter>
593             <action android:name="android.intent.action.VIEW" />
```

```

594         <category android:name="android.intent.category.DEFAULT" />
595         <category android:name="android.intent.category.BROWSABLE" />
596         <data
597             android:host="as.example.com"
598             android:path="/oauth2redirect"
599             android:scheme="myappscheme" />
600     </intent-filter>
601 </activity>
602 <activity android:name=".activity.AuthResultHandlerActivity" />
603 <activity android:name=".activity.AuthCanceledHandlerActivity" />
604 </application>
605 </manifest>
606 =====

```

607 2.3.3 Create Activities to Handle Authorization Responses

- 608 1. Create a utility class for reusable code (**Utility**), and create activities to handle successful
609 authorizations (**AuthResultHandlerActivity**) and canceled authorizations
610 (**AuthCanceledHandlerActivity**):

```

611 =====
612 public class Utility {
613     public static AuthorizationService getAuthorizationService(Context context)
614     {
615         AppAuthConfiguration appAuthConfig = new AppAuthConfiguration.Builder()
616             .setBrowserMatcher(new BrowserWhitelist(
617                 VersionedBrowserMatcher.CHROME_CUSTOM_TAB,
618                 VersionedBrowserMatcher.SAMSUNG_CUSTOM_TAB))
619         // the browser matcher above allows you to choose which in-app
620 browser
621         // tab providers will be supported by your app in its OAuth2 flow
622         .setConnectionBuilder(new ConnectionBuilder() {
623             @NonNull
624             public HttpURLConnection openConnection(@NonNull Uri uri)

```

```
625         throws IOException {
626             URL url = new URL(uri.toString());
627             HttpURLConnection connection =
628                 (HttpURLConnection) url.openConnection();
629             if (connection instanceof HttpsURLConnection) {
630                 // optional: use your own trust manager to set a custom
631                 // SSLSocketFactory on the HttpsURLConnection
632             }
633             return connection;
634         }
635     }).build();
636
637     return new AuthorizationService(context, appAuthConfig);
638 }
639
640 public static AuthState restoreAuthState(Context context) {
641     // we use SharedPreferences to store a String version of the JSON
642     // Auth State, and here we retrieve it to convert it back to a POJO
643     SharedPreferences sharedPreferences =
644         PreferenceManager.getDefaultSharedPreferences(context);
645     String jsonString = sharedPreferences.getString("AUTHSTATE", null);
646     if (!TextUtils.isEmpty(jsonString)) {
647         try {
648             return AuthState.jsonDeserialize(jsonString);
649         } catch (JSONException jsonException) {
650             // handle this appropriately
651         }
652     }
653     return null;
654 }
```

```
655     }
656     =====
657     public class AuthResultHandlerActivity extends Activity {
658
659         private static final String TAG = AuthResultHandlerActivity.class.getName();
660
661         private AuthState mAuthState;
662         private AuthorizationService mAuthService;
663
664         @Override
665         protected void onCreate(Bundle savedInstanceState) {
666             super.onCreate(savedInstanceState);
667
668             AuthorizationResponse res =
669             AuthorizationResponse.fromIntent(getIntent());
670             AuthorizationException ex =
671             AuthorizationException.fromIntent(getIntent());
672             mAuthState = new AuthState(res, ex);
673             mAuthService = Utility.getAuthorizationService(this);
674
675             if (res != null) {
676                 Log.d(TAG, "Received AuthorizationResponse");
677                 performTokenRequest(res.createTokenExchangeRequest());
678             } else {
679                 Log.d(TAG, "Authorization failed: " + ex);
680             }
681         }
682
683         @Override
684         protected void onDestroy() {
685             super.onDestroy();
```

```
686         mAuthService.dispose();
687     }
688
689     private void performTokenRequest(TokenRequest request) {
690         TokenResponseCallback callback = new TokenResponseCallback() {
691             @Override
692             public void onTokenRequestCompleted(
693                 TokenResponse tokenResponse,
694                 AuthorizationException authException) {
695                 receivedTokenResponse(tokenResponse, authException);
696             }
697         };
698         mAuthService.performTokenRequest(request, callback);
699     }
700
701     private void receivedTokenResponse(TokenResponse tokenResponse,
702                                     AuthorizationException authException) {
703         Log.d(TAG, "Token request complete");
704         if (tokenResponse != null) {
705             mAuthState.update(tokenResponse, authException);
706
707             // persist auth state to SharedPreferences
708             PreferenceManager.getDefaultSharedPreferences(this)
709                 .edit()
710                 .putString("AUTHSTATE", mAuthState.jsonSerializeString())
711                 .commit();
712
713             String accessToken = mAuthState.getAccessToken();
714             if (accessToken != null) {
715                 // optional: pull claims out of JWT (name, etc.)
```

```

716         }
717     } else {
718         Log.d(TAG, " ", authException);
719     }
720 }
721 }
722 =====
723 public class AuthCanceledHandlerActivity extends Activity {
724
725     private static final String TAG =
726     AuthCanceledHandlerActivity.class.getName();
727
728     @Override
729     protected void onCreate(Bundle savedInstanceState) {
730         super.onCreate(savedInstanceState);
731
732         Log.d(TAG, "OpenID Connect authorization flow canceled");
733
734         // go back to MainActivity
735         finish();
736     }
737 }
738 =====

```

739 2.3.4 Executing the OAuth 2 Authorization Flow

- 740 1. In whatever activity you are using to initiate authentication, add in the necessary code to use
741 the AppAuth SDK to execute the OAuth 2 authorization flow:

```

742 =====
743 ...
744 // some method, usually a "login" button, activates the OAuth2 flow
745
746 String OAUTH_AUTH_ENDPOINT =
747 "https://as.example.com:9031/as/authorization.oauth2";
748

```

```

749     String OAUTH_TOKEN_ENDPOINT = "https://as.example.com:9031/as/token.oauth2";
750     String OAUTH_REDIRECT_URI = "myappscheme://app.example.com/oauth2redirect";
751     String OAUTH_CLIENT_ID = "myapp";
752     String OAUTH_PKCE_CHALLENGE_METHOD = "S256"; // options are "S256" and "plain"
753
754     // CREATE THE SERVICE CONFIGURATION
755     AuthorizationServiceConfiguration config = new
756     AuthorizationServiceConfiguration(
757         Uri.parse(OAUTH_AUTH_ENDPOINT), // auth endpoint
758         Uri.parse(OAUTH_TOKEN_ENDPOINT), // token endpoint
759         null // registration endpoint
760     );
761
762     // OPTIONAL: Add any additional parameters to the authorization request
763     HashMap<String, String> additionalParams = new HashMap<>();
764     additionalParams.put("acr_values", "urn:acr:form");
765
766     // BUILD THE AUTHORIZATION REQUEST
767     AuthorizationRequest.Builder builder = new AuthorizationRequest.Builder(
768         config,
769         OAUTH_CLIENT_ID,
770         ResponseTypeValues.CODE,
771         Uri.parse(OAUTH_REDIRECT_URI))
772         .setScopes("profile") // scope is optional, set whatever is needed by
773         your app
774         .setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams);
775
776     // SET UP PKCE CODE VERIFIER
777     String codeVerifier = CodeVerifierUtil.generateRandomCodeVerifier();
778     String codeVerifierChallenge =
779     CodeVerifierUtil.deriveCodeVerifierChallenge(codeVerifier);
780     builder.setCodeVerifier(codeVerifier, codeVerifierChallenge,
781
782         OAUTH_PKCE_CHALLENGE_METHOD);
783
784     AuthorizationRequest request = builder.build();
785
786     // PERFORM THE AUTHORIZATION REQUEST
787     // this pauses and leaves the current activity
788     Intent postAuthIntent = new Intent(this, AuthResultHandlerActivity.class);
789     Intent authCanceledIntent = new Intent(this,
790     AuthCanceledHandlerActivity.class);
791     mAuthService.performAuthorizationRequest(
792         request,
793         PendingIntent.getActivity(this, request.hashCode(), postAuthIntent, 0),
794         PendingIntent.getActivity(this, request.hashCode(), authCanceledIntent,
795         0));
796     ...
797
798     // when the activity resumes, check if the OAuth2 flow was successful
799

```

```

800     @Override
801     protected void onResume() {
802         super.onResume();
803
804         AuthState authState = Utility.restoreAuthState(this);
805         if (authState != null) {
806             // we are authorized!
807             // proceed to the next activity that requires an access token
808         }
809     }
810
811     ...
812     =====

```

813 2.3.5 Fetching and Using the Access Token

- 814 1. After you have proceeded from the prior activity, you can fetch your access token. If some time
815 has passed since you obtained the access token, you may need to use your refresh token to get
816 a new access token. AppAuth handles both cases the same way. Implement the following code
817 wherever you need to use the access token:

```

818     =====
819     ...
820
821     // assuming we have an instance of a Context as mContext...
822
823     // ensure we have a fresh access token to perform any future actions
824     final AuthorizationService authService =
825     Utility.getAuthorizationService(mContext);
826     AuthState authState = Utility.restoreAuthState(mContext);
827     authState.performActionWithFreshTokens(authService, new
828     AuthState.AuthStateAction() {
829         @Override
830         public void execute(String accessToken, String idToken,
831
832             AuthorizationException ex) {
833             JWT jwt = null;
834             if (ex != null) {
835                 // negotiation for fresh tokens failed, check ex for more details
836             } else {
837                 // we can now use accessToken to access remote services
838
839                 // this is typically done by including the token in an HTTP header,
840                 // or in a handshake transaction if another transport protocol is
841                 used
842             }
843         }
844     });

```

```
841         }  
842     });  
843  
844     ...  
845     =====
```

846 **3 How to Install and Configure the OAuth 2 AS**

847 **3.1 Platform and System Requirements**

848 Ping Identity is used as the AS for this build. The AS issues access tokens to the client after successfully
849 authenticating the resource owner and obtaining authorization [11].

850 The requirements for Ping Identity can be categorized into three groups: software, hardware, and
851 network.

852 **3.1.1 Software Requirements**

853 The software requirements are as follows:

- 854 ■ OS: Microsoft Windows Server, Oracle Enterprise Linux, Oracle Solaris, Red Hat Enterprise, SUSE
855 Linux Enterprise
- 856 ■ Virtual systems: VMware, Xen, Windows Hyper-V
- 857 ■ Java environment: Oracle Java Standard Edition (SE)
- 858 ■ Data integration: Ping Directory, Microsoft Active Directory (AD), Oracle Directory Server,
859 Microsoft Structured Query Language (SQL) Server, Oracle Database, Oracle MySQL 5.7,
860 PostgreSQL

861 **3.1.2 Hardware Requirements**

862 The minimum hardware requirements are as follows:

- 863 ■ Intel Pentium 4, 1.8-gigahertz (GHz) processor
- 864 ■ 1 gigabyte (GB) of Random Access Memory (RAM)
- 865 ■ 1 GB of available hard drive space

866 A detailed discussion on this topic and additional information can be found at
867 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/concept/
868 systemRequirements.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/concept/systemRequirements.html).

869 3.1.3 Network Requirements

870 Ping Identity identifies several ports to be open for different purposes. These purposes can include
871 communication with the administrative console, runtime engine, cluster engine, and Kerberos engine.

872 A detailed discussion on each port can be found at
873 https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf84/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/pf_t_inst
874 [allPingFederateRedHatEnterpriseLinux.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf84/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/pf_t_inst).

875 In this implementation, we needed ports to be opened to communicate with the administrative console
876 and the runtime engine.

877 For this experimentation, we have used the configuration identified in the following subsections.

878 *3.1.3.1 Software Configuration*

879 The software configuration is as follows:

- 880 ▪ OS: CentOS Linux Release 7.3.1611 (Core)
- 881 ▪ Virtual systems: Vmware ESXI 6.5
- 882 ▪ Java environment: OpenJDK Version 1.8.0_131
- 883 ▪ Data integration: Active Directory (AD)

884 *3.1.3.2 Hardware Configuration*

885 The hardware configuration is as follows:

- 886 ▪ Processor: Intel(R) Xeon(R) central processing unit (CPU) E5-2420 0 at 1.90 GHz
- 887 ▪ Memory: 2 GB
- 888 ▪ Hard drive: 25 GB

889 *3.1.3.3 Network Configuration*

890 The network configuration is as follows:

- 891 ▪ 9031: This port allows access to the runtime engine; this port must be accessible to client
892 devices and federation partners.
- 893 ▪ 9999: This port allows the traffic to the administrative console; only PingFederate administrators
894 need access.

895 3.2 How to Install the OAuth 2 AS

896 Before the installation of Ping Identity AS, the prerequisites identified in the following subsections need
897 to be fulfilled.

898 3.2.1 Java Installation

899 Java 8 can be installed in several ways on CentOS 7 using *yum*. Yum is a package manager on the
900 CentOS 7 platform that automates software processes, such as installation, upgrade, and removal, in a
901 consistent way.

- 902 1. Download the Java Development Kit (JDK) in the appropriate format for your environment, from
903 Oracle's website; for CentOS, the Red Hat Package Manager (RPM) download can be used:
904 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jdk8-downloads-2133151.html>.
- 905 2. As root, install the RPM by using the following command, substituting the actual version of the
906 downloaded file:
907

```
rpm -ivh jdk-8u151-linux-x64.rpm
```
- 908 3. Alternatively, the JDK can be downloaded in *.tar.gz* format and unzipped in the appropriate
909 location (i.e., */usr/share* on CentOS 7).

910 3.2.2 Java Post Installation

911 The `alternatives` command maintains symbolic links determining default commands. This command
912 can be used to select the default Java command. This is helpful even in cases where there are multiple
913 installations of Java on the system.

- 914 1. Use the following command to select the default Java command:

915

```
alternatives --config java
```

916 There are 3 programs which provide 'java'.

```
917      Selection    Command
918      -----
919      1             /usr/java/jre1.8.0_111/bin/java
920      ** 2          java-1.8.0-openjdk.x86_64 (/usr/lib/jvm/java-1.8.0-openjdk-
921      1.8.0.131-3.b12.el7_3.x86_64/jre/bin/java)
922      3             /usr/java/jdk1.8.0_131/jre/bin/java
923      Enter to keep the current selection[+], or type selection number:
```

924 This presents the user with a configuration menu for choosing a Java instance. Once a selection
925 is made, the link becomes the default command system wide.

- 926 2. To make Java available to all users, the JAVA_HOME environment variable was set by using the
927 following command:

928 `echo export JAVA_HOME="/usr/java/latest" > /etc/profile.d/javaenv.sh`

- 929 3. For cryptographic functions, download the *Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength*
930 *Jurisdiction Policy Files 8* from
931 <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133166.html>.

- 932 4. Uncompress and extract the downloaded file. The installation procedure is described in the
933 Readme document. In the lab, *local_policy.jar* was extracted to the default location, `<java-`
934 `home>/lib/security.Network Configuration`.

- 935 5. Check if the firewall is running or not by using the command below. If it is up, it will return a
936 status that shows it is running:

937 `firewall-cmd --state`

- 938 a. If it is not running, activate the firewall by using the following command:

939 `sudo systemctl start firewalld.service`

- 940 6. Check if the required ports, 9031 and 9999, are open by using the following command:

941 `firewall-cmd --list-ports`

- 942 a. This command will return the following values:

943 `6031/tcp 9999/udp 9031/tcp 6031/udp 9998/udp 9031/udp 9999/tcp 9998/tcp`
944 `8080/tcp`

945 From the returned ports, we can determine which ports and protocols are open.

- 946 b. In case the required ports are not open, issue the command below. It should return
947 `success`.

948 `firewall-cmd --zone=public --permanent --add-port=9031/tcp`

949 `success`

- 950 7. Reload the firewall by using the following command to make the rule change take effect:

951 `firewall-cmd --reload`

952 `Success`

- 953 a. Now, when the open ports are listed, the required ports should show up:

954 `firewall-cmd --zone=public --list-ports`

955 `6031/tcp 9999/udp 9031/tcp 6031/udp 9998/udp 9031/udp 9999/tcp 9998/tcp`
956 `8080/tcp 5000/tcp`

957 3.2.3 PingFederate Installation

958 Ping installation documentation is available at

959 https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf_sm_installPingFederate_pf82/page/pf_t_installPingFederateRedHatEnterpriseLinux.html?#.

961 Some important points are listed below:

- 962 ▪ Obtain a Ping Identity license. It can be acquired from
- 963 <https://www.pingidentity.com/en/account/sign-on.html>.
- 964 ▪ For this experiment, installation was done using the zip file. Installation was done at */usr/share*.
- 965 ▪ The license was updated.
- 966 ▪ The PingFederate service can be configured as a service that automatically starts at system boot. PingFederate provides instructions for doing this on different OSs. In the lab, the Linux
- 967 instructions at the link provided below were used. Note that, while the instructions were written
- 968 for an *init.d*-based system, these instructions will also work on a systemd-based system.
- 969
- 970 https://docs.pingidentity.com/bundle/pf_sm_installPingFederate_pf82/page/pf_t_installPingFederateServiceLinuxManually.html?#
- 971

972 The following configuration procedures are completed in the PingFederate administrative console,

973 which is available at <https://<ping-server-hostname>:9999/pingfederate/app>.

974 3.2.4 Certificate Installation

975 During installation, PingFederate generates a self-signed TLS certificate, which is not trusted by desktop

976 or mobile device browsers. A certificate should be obtained from a trusted internal or external CA, and

977 should be installed on the PingFederate server. The private key and signed certificate can be uploaded

978 and activated for use on the run-time server port and the admin port by navigating to **Server Settings** in

979 the console and clicking on **SSL Server Certificates**.

980 In addition, most server roles described in this guide will require the creation of a signing certificate. This

981 is required for a SAML or OIDC IdP, and for an OAuth AS if access tokens will be issued as JWTs. To

982 create or import a signing certificate, under **Server Configuration – Certificate Management**, click

983 **Signing & Decryption Keys & Certificates**. A self-signed certificate can be created, or a trusted certificate

984 can be obtained and uploaded there.

985 3.3 How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS

986 Configuration of a Ping OAuth 2 AS is described at

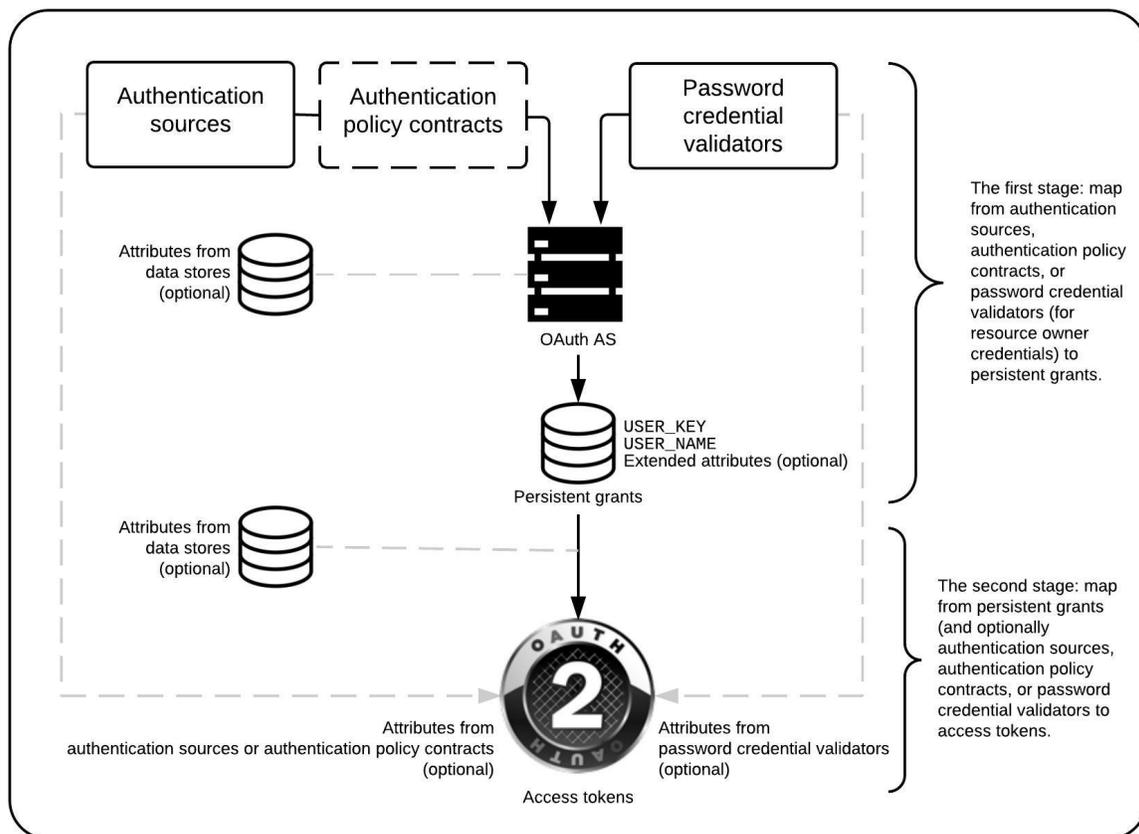
987 https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_usingOAuthMenuSelections.html#concept_usingOAuthMenuSelections.

988

989 This guide documents the configuration for an AS serving the role of the *idm.sandbox* server hosted in
 990 the Motorola Solutions cloud instance, as depicted in Figure 1-1. This AS is configured to support the
 991 three usage scenarios—local user authentication at the AS, redirection to a SAML IdP, and redirection to
 992 an OIDC IdP—and to initiate the correct login flow based on an IdP discovery mechanism.

993 An understanding of the PingFederate OAuth implementation helps provide context for the
 994 configurations documented in this guide. PingFederate supports several different authentication flows
 995 and mechanisms, but there is a common framework for how user attributes are mapped into OAuth
 996 tokens. This framework is depicted in Figure 3-1, which is taken from PingFederate’s documentation at
 997 https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf83/index.shtml#concept_mappingOauthAttributes.html#concept_mappingOauthAttributes.
 998

999 **Figure 3-1 Access Token Attribute Mapping Framework**



1000

1001 The overall OAuth processing flow at the AS is as follows:

1002

1. The AS receives an OAuth authorization request from an unauthenticated user.

- 1003 2. The AS authenticates the user through the configured authentication adapters, IdP connections,
1004 and/or authentication policies.
- 1005 3. Information from adapters or policy contracts, optionally combined with user information
1006 retrieved from data stores such as Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), are used to
1007 build a persistent grant context. The two mandatory attributes in the persistent grant context are
1008 listed below:
- 1009 ▪ **USER_KEY** – This is a globally unique user identifier. For ASs that interact with multiple
1010 IdPs, this name should be resistant to naming collisions across user organizations (e.g.,
1011 email address or distinguished name).
 - 1012 ▪ **USER_NAME** – If the user is prompted to authorize the request, this name will be
1013 displayed on the page, so a user-friendly name, such as [givenName lastName], could be
1014 used here; the name does not need to be unique.
- 1015 4. If authorization prompts are enabled, the user is prompted to approve the authorization
1016 request; for this lab build, these prompts were disabled on the assumption that fast access to
1017 apps is a high priority for the PSFR community.
- 1018 5. If the request is authorized, a second mapping process takes place to populate the access token
1019 with information from the persistent grant and, optionally, from adapters, policy contracts, or
1020 data stores.

1021 Note that persistent grant attributes are stored and can be retrieved and reused when the client uses a
1022 refresh token to obtain a new access token, whereas attributes that are looked up in the second stage
1023 would be looked up again during the token refresh request. Storing attributes in the persistent grant can
1024 therefore reduce the need for repeated directory queries; however, it may be preferable to always
1025 query some attributes that are subject to change (like account status) again when a new access token is
1026 requested. In addition, it is important to note that storing persistent grant attributes requires a
1027 supported relational database or LDAP data store. Refer to the following documentation for a list of
1028 supported data stores:
1029 <https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#gettingStartedGuide/task/installingPingFederate.html>.
1030

1031 The following steps go through the configuration of the AS.

- 1032 1. Enable the PingFederate installation to work as an AS. This can be done in the following steps:
- 1033 a. Under **Main**, click the **Server Configuration** section tab, and then click **Server Settings**.
 - 1034 b. In **Server Settings**, click the **Roles & Protocols** tab. The Roles & Protocols screen will appear as shown in Figure 3-2.
1035
 - 1036 i. Click **ENABLE OAUTH 2.0 AUTHORIZATION SERVER (AS) ROLE**.

- 1037 ii. Click **ENABLE IDENTITY PROVIDER (IDP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING**,
1038 and then under it, click **SAML 2.0**. Although this server does not act as a SAML
1039 IdP, it is necessary to enable the IdP role and at least one protocol to configure
1040 the local user authentication use case.
- 1041 iii. Click **ENABLE SERVICE PROVIDER (SP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING**,
1042 and then under it, click **SAML 2.0** and **OPENID CONNECT**; this enables integra-
1043 tion with both types of IdPs.

1044 Figure 3-2 Server Roles for AS

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. A user profile icon is visible in the top right. On the left, a sidebar menu lists 'MAIN' categories: 'IdP Configuration', 'SP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration' (which is highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Server Settings' and contains a grid of tabs: 'System Administration', 'System Info', 'Runtime Notifications', 'Runtime Reporting', 'Account Management', 'Roles & Protocols', 'Federation Info', 'System Options', 'Metadata Signing', 'Metadata Lifetime', and 'Summary'. The 'Summary' tab is selected. Below the tabs, a text prompt reads: 'Select the role(s) and protocol(s) that you intend to use with your federation partners.' The configuration options are as follows:

- ENABLE OAUTH 2.0 AUTHORIZATION SERVER (AS) ROLE
 - OPENID CONNECT
- ENABLE IDENTITY PROVIDER (IDP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
 - SAML 2.0
 - AUTO-CONNECT PROFILE
 - SAML 1.1
 - SAML 1.0
 - WS-FEDERATION
 - OUTBOUND PROVISIONING
 - WS-TRUST
- ENABLE SERVICE PROVIDER (SP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
 - SAML 2.0
 - AUTO-CONNECT PROFILE
 - ATTRIBUTE REQUESTER MAPPING FOR X.509 ATTRIBUTE SHARING PROFILE (XASP)
 - SAML 1.1
 - SAML 1.0
 - WS-FEDERATION
 - WS-TRUST
 - INBOUND PROVISIONING
 - OPENID CONNECT
- ENABLE IDP DISCOVERY ROLE (SAML 2.0 ONLY)

At the bottom right, there are four buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Save'.

1045

- 1046 c. Also under **Server Settings**, on the **Federation Info** tab, enter the **BASE URL** and **SAML**
 1047 **2.0 ENTITY ID** (Figure 3-3). The **BASE URL** should use a public DNS name that is resolvable
 1048 by any federation partners. The **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** is simply an identifier string that
 1049 must be unique among federation partners; it is recommended to be a Uniform Resource
 1050 Identifier (URI), per the SAML 2.0 Core specification [12].

1051 **Figure 3-3 Federation Info**

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. A user profile icon is visible in the top right. The left sidebar contains a 'MAIN' menu with options: IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings, and Server Configuration (which is highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Server Settings' and features a tabbed interface with the following tabs: System Info, Runtime Notifications, Runtime Reporting, Account Management, Roles & Protocols, Federation Info (selected), System Options, Metadata Signing, Metadata Lifetime, and Summary. Below the tabs, a text block states: 'You must create a unique identifier for your server for use with your federation partners. A unique identifier is required for each protocol enabled. You will need to communicate this with your partners out-of-band or through metadata exchange. The Base URL is used to construct other URLs in the system and may be used as part of your system ID.' Two input fields are present: 'BASE URL' with the value 'https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.c' and 'SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID' with the value 'ctoPingFed_entityID'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next'. The footer of the page contains copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.11'.

- 1052
- 1053 2. The next step is to configure the OAuth AS. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab under **Main**.
- 1054 a. Click **Authorization Server Settings** under the **Authorization Server** header. This displays
 1055 the **Authorization Server Settings** (Figure 3-4).

1056 Figure 3-4 AS Settings

Ping Identity PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.2.0

Authorization Server Settings

Provide general configuration and policy for the PingFederate Authorization Server.

AUTHORIZATION CODE TIMEOUT (SECONDS)

AUTHORIZATION CODE ENTROPY (BYTES)

Refresh Token and Persistent Grant Settings

PERSISTENT GRANT LIFETIME (BLANK FOR INDEFINITE) Days

REFRESH TOKEN LENGTH (CHARACTERS)

ROLL REFRESH TOKEN VALUES (DEFAULT POLICY)

MINIMUM INTERVAL TO ROLL REFRESH TOKENS (HOURS)

REUSE EXISTING PERSISTENT ACCESS GRANTS FOR GRANT TYPES IMPLICIT AUTHORIZATION CODE RESOURCE OWNER PASSWORD CREDENTIALS

BYPASS AUTHORIZATION FOR PREVIOUSLY APPROVED PERSISTENT GRANTS

ALLOW UNIDENTIFIED CLIENTS TO MAKE RESOURCE OWNER PASSWORD CREDENTIALS GRANTS

ALLOW UNIDENTIFIED CLIENTS TO REQUEST EXTENSION GRANTS

Persistent Grant Extended Attributes

Attribute	Action
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>

OAuth Administrative Web Services Settings

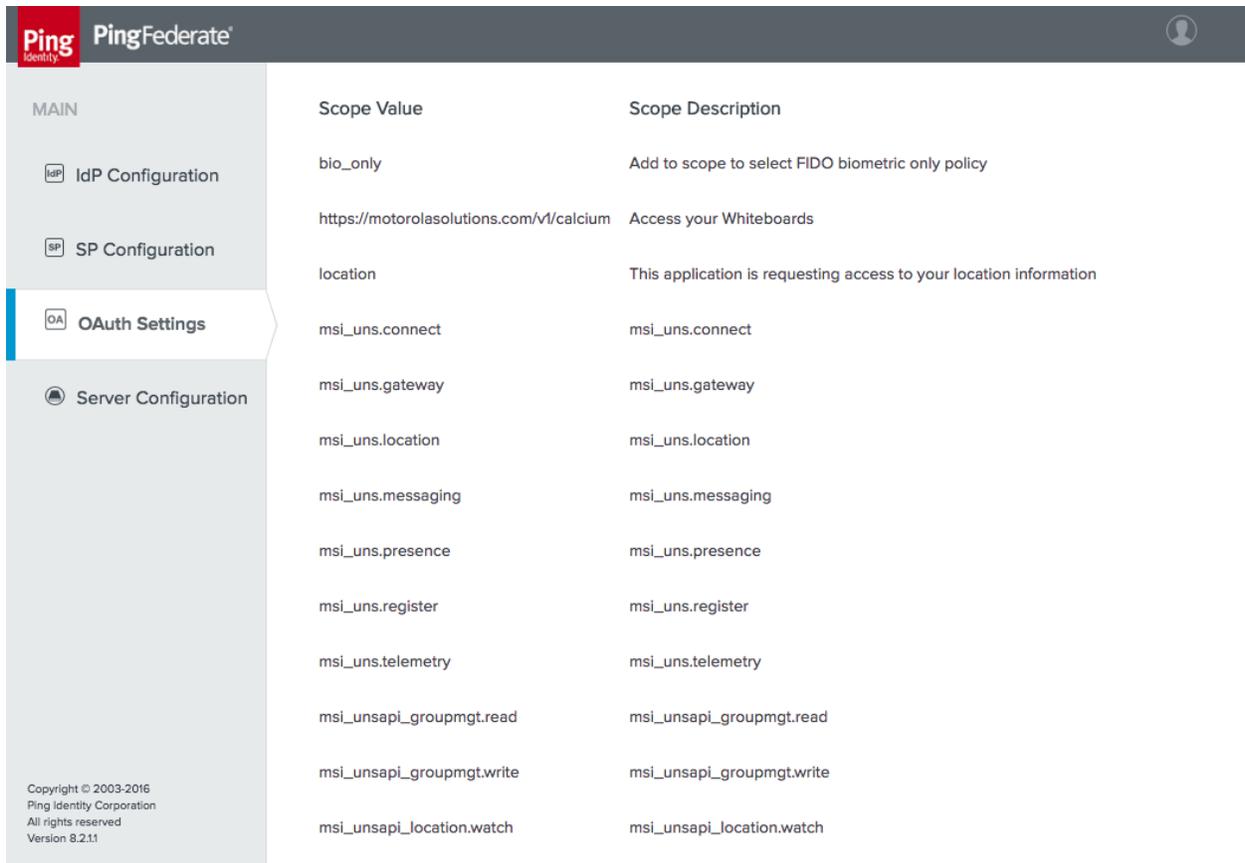
PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR

1057

1058 The default settings are suitable for the lab build architecture; organizations may wish
 1059 to customize these default settings in accordance with organizational security policy or
 1060 usage requirements. Some notes on individual settings are provided below:

- 1061 ▪ **AUTHORIZATION CODE TIMEOUT (SECONDS):** Once an authorization code has
 1062 been returned to a client, it must be exchanged for an access token within this
 1063 interval. This reduces the risk of an unauthorized client obtaining an access
 1064 token through brute-force guessing or intercepting a valid client's code. *Proof*
 1065 *Key for Code Exchange (PKCE)* [13], as implemented by the AppAuth library, is
 1066 another useful mechanism to protect the authorization code.
 - 1067 ▪ **AUTHORIZATION CODE ENTROPY (BYTES):** Length of the authorization code
 1068 returned by the AS to the client, in bytes
 - 1069 ▪ **REFRESH TOKEN LENGTH (CHARACTERS):** Length of the refresh token, in
 1070 characters
 - 1071 ▪ **ROLL REFRESH TOKEN VALUES (DEFAULT POLICY):** When selected, the OAuth
 1072 AS generates a new refresh token value when a new access token is obtained.
 - 1073 ▪ **MINIMUM INTERVAL TO ROLL REFRESH TOKENS (HOURS):** The minimum
 1074 number of hours that must pass before a new refresh token value can be issued.
 - 1075 ▪ **REUSE EXISTING PERSISTENT ACCESS GRANTS FOR GRANT TYPES:**
 - 1076 • **IMPLICIT:** Consent from the user is requested only for the first OAuth
 1077 resource request associated with the grant.
 - 1078 • **AUTHORIZATION CODE:** Same as above if the **BYPASS AUTHORIZATION**
 1079 **FOR PREVIOUSLY APPROVED PERSISTENT GRANTS** is selected; this can
 1080 be used to prompt the user for authorization only once to avoid
 1081 repeated prompts for the same client.
 - 1082 ▪ **PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR:** Required for Hypertext Transfer Protocol
 1083 (HTTP) Basic authentication if the OAuth Representational State Transfer (REST)
 1084 Web Service is used for managing client apps; this functionality was not used for
 1085 this build.
- 1086 3. Next, configure scopes, as required, for the app. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, and then
 1087 click **Scope Management**. The specific scope values will be determined by the client app
 1088 developer. Generally speaking, scopes refer to different authorizations that can be requested by
 1089 the client and granted by the user. Access tokens are associated with the scopes for which they
 1090 are authorized, which can limit the authorities granted to clients. Figure 3-5 shows several
 1091 scopes that were added to the AS for this lab build that have specific meanings in the PSX apps
 1092 suite.

1093 Figure 3-5 Scopes



The screenshot shows the PingFederate administration console. The left sidebar contains navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, SP Configuration, OAuth Settings (highlighted), and Server Configuration. The main content area displays a table of scopes.

Scope Value	Scope Description
bio_only	Add to scope to select FIDO biometric only policy
https://motorolasolutions.com/v1/calcium	Access your Whiteboards
location	This application is requesting access to your location information
msi_uns.connect	msi_uns.connect
msi_uns.gateway	msi_uns.gateway
msi_uns.location	msi_uns.location
msi_uns.messaging	msi_uns.messaging
msi_uns.presence	msi_uns.presence
msi_uns.register	msi_uns.register
msi_uns.telemetry	msi_uns.telemetry
msi_unsapi_groupmgt.read	msi_unsapi_groupmgt.read
msi_unsapi_groupmgt.write	msi_unsapi_groupmgt.write
msi_unsapi_location.watch	msi_unsapi_location.watch

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

1094

1095 4. Define an Access Token Management profile. This profile determines whether access tokens are
 1096 issued as simple reference token strings or as JWTs. For this lab build, JWTs were used. JWTs are
 1097 signed and optionally encrypted, so resource servers can validate them locally and they can
 1098 contain user attributes and other information. Reference tokens are also a viable option, but
 1099 resource servers must contact the AS's introspection endpoint to determine whether they are
 1100 valid, and must obtain the granted scopes and any other information associated with them. The
 1101 Access Token Management Profile also defines any additional attributes that will be associated
 1102 with the token.

1103 a. Create an Access Token Manager by following these steps:

1104 i. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Management**, and then
 1105 click **Create New Instance**.

1106 ii. On the **Type** tab, give the instance a meaningful name and ID, and select the to-
 1107 ken type (Figure 3-6).

1108 Figure 3-6 Access Token Management Instance

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. A user profile icon is visible in the top right corner. On the left, a sidebar menu is titled 'MAIN' and contains the following items: 'IdP Configuration', 'SP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings' (which is highlighted with a blue bar), and 'Server Configuration'. The main content area is titled 'Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance'. Below the title is a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Type' (selected), 'Instance Configuration', 'Access Token Attribute Contract', 'Resource URIs', 'Access Control', and 'Summary'. Below the tabs, there is a text prompt: 'Enter an Access Token Management Instance Name and Id, select the plugin Access Token Management Type, and a parent if applicable. The types available are limited to the plugins currently installed on your server.' The form contains four input fields: 'INSTANCE NAME' with the value 'fidoJwt', 'INSTANCE ID' with the value 'fidoJwt', 'TYPE' with a dropdown menu set to 'JSON Web Tokens' and a link 'Visit PingIdentity.com for additional types', and 'PARENT INSTANCE' with a dropdown menu set to 'None'. At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: 'Cancel' and 'Next'.

1109

- 1110 5. On the next tab, **Instance Configuration**, select a symmetric key or certificate to use for JWT
 1111 signing (Figure 3-7). In this instance, a signing certificate was created as described in
 1112 [Section 3.2.4](#). Tokens can also optionally be encrypted using JSON Web Encryption (JWE) [\[14\]](#); in
 1113 this case, the client developer would provide a certificate in order to receive encrypted
 1114 messages. JWE was not used in the lab build.

1115 Figure 3-7 Access Token Manager Instance Configuration

Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance

Complete the configuration necessary to issue and validate access tokens. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Access Token Management plugin.

A JSON Web Token (JWT) Bearer Access Token Management Plug-in that enables PingFederate to issue (and optionally validate) cryptographically secure self-contained OAuth access tokens.

SYMMETRIC KEYS
(A group of keys for use with symmetric encryption and MAC algorithms.)

KEY ID (An Identifier for the given key)	KEY (Encoded symmetric key)	ENCODING (How the binary key is encoded as a string)	Action
Add a new row to 'Symmetric Keys'			

CERTIFICATES
(A group of certificates and their corresponding public/private key pairs for use with signatures)

KEY ID (An Identifier for the given key)	CERTIFICATE (Requires an EC key or RSA key length of at least 2048 bits)	Action
jwt signer	CN=as1.cpsid.msso, OU=NCCoE, O=NIST, L=Rockville, ST=Maryland, C=US	Edit Delete
Add a new row to 'Certificates'		

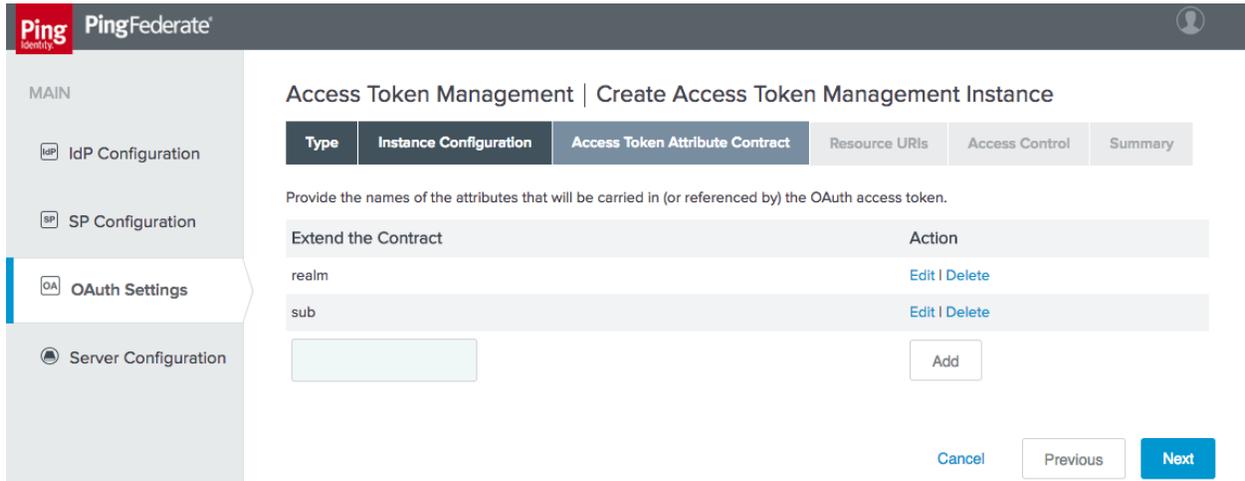
Field Name	Field Value	Description
TOKEN LIFETIME	120	Defines how long, in minutes, an access token is valid.
JWS ALGORITHM	RSA using SHA-256	The HMAC or signing algorithm used to protect the integrity of the token. For HMAC, the active symmetric key must be selected below. For RSA or EC, the active signing certificate must be selected. Integrity protection can also be achieved using symmetric encryption, in which case this field can be left unselected.
ACTIVE SYMMETRIC KEY ID	-- Select One --	The Key ID of the key to use when producing JWTs using an HMAC-based algorithm.
ACTIVE SIGNING CERTIFICATE KEY ID	jwt signer	The Key ID of the key pair and certificate to use when producing JWTs using an RSA-based or EC-based algorithm.
JWE ALGORITHM	-- Select One --	The algorithm used to encrypt or otherwise determine the value of the content encryption key.
JWE CONTENT ENCRYPTION ALGORITHM	-- Select One --	The content encryption algorithm used to perform authenticated encryption on the plaintext payload of the token.
ACTIVE SYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION KEY ID	-- Select One --	The Key ID of the key to use when using a symmetric encryption algorithm.
ASYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION KEY		An asymmetric encryption public key, which can be in either JWK format or a certificate.
ASYMMETRIC ENCRYPTION JWKS URL		The HTTPS URL of a JSON Web Key Set endpoint that has public key(s) for encryption.

[Manage Signing Certificates](#) [Show Advanced Fields](#)

[Cancel](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1117 6. On the **Access Token Attribute Contract** tab, add the two values **realm** and **sub** to the attribute
 1118 contract (Figure 3-8).

1119 **Figure 3-8 Access Token Manager Attribute Contract**



- 1120
- 1121 7. The **Resource URIs** and **Access Control** tabs were not used for this build. Click **Save** to complete
 1122 the Access Token Manager.
- 1123 8. Next, one or more OAuth clients need to be registered with the AS. In the Motorola Solutions
 1124 use case, the PSX Cockpit app is registered as a client. OAuth Client registration is described for
 1125 PingFederate at:
 1126 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringCl
 1127 ient.html](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringClient.html).

1128 To create a new client, click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Clients**, and then click **Create**
 1129 **New**. Clients are displayed on the rightmost side of the screen in the **OAuth Settings** window.
 1130 Once **Create New** is clicked, the screen shown in Figure 3-9 and Figure 3-10 will appear. Due to
 1131 the vertical size of the pages of this document, the screenshot is divided into two parts for
 1132 legibility.

1133 Figure 3-9 OAuth Client Registration, Part 1

Ping Identity PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

Client

Manage the configuration and policy information about a client.

CLIENT ID: ssoclient_nist

CLIENT AUTHENTICATION: NONE CLIENT SECRET

SECRET: [.....] **Generate Secret**

CHANGE SECRET

CLIENT TLS CERTIFICATE

ISSUER: [- SELECT -]

SUBJECT DN: []

You can also extract the Subject DN from a certificate file.

No file selected **Choose file**

Extract

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.11

1134

1135 Figure 3-10 OAuth Client Registration, Part 2

NAME	<input type="text" value="ssoclient_nist"/>								
DESCRIPTION	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; height: 40px;"></div>								
REDIRECT URIS	<table><thead><tr><th>Redirection URIs</th><th>Action</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>http://localhost/</td><td>Edit Delete</td></tr><tr><td>napps://localhost/</td><td>Edit Delete</td></tr><tr><td><input type="text"/></td><td><input type="button" value="Add"/></td></tr></tbody></table>	Redirection URIs	Action	http://localhost/	Edit Delete	napps://localhost/	Edit Delete	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>
Redirection URIs	Action								
http://localhost/	Edit Delete								
napps://localhost/	Edit Delete								
<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Add"/>								
LOGO URL	<input type="text"/>								
BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bypass								
RESTRICT SCOPES	<input type="checkbox"/> Restrict								
ALLOWED GRANT TYPES	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Authorization Code <input type="checkbox"/> Resource Owner Password Credentials <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Refresh Token <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Implicit <input type="checkbox"/> Client Credentials <input type="checkbox"/> Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server) <input type="checkbox"/> Extension Grants								
DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER	<input type="text" value="fidoJwt"/>								
PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Global Setting <input type="radio"/> Grants Do Not Expire <input type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="text" value="Days"/>								
REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Use Global Setting <input type="radio"/> Don't Roll <input type="radio"/> Roll								
OPENID CONNECT	ID Token Signing Algorithm <input type="text" value="HMAC using SHA-256"/> Policy <input type="text" value="fidoPolicy"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Grant Access to Session Revocation API								

1136

1137 The following are notes on the parameters on this screen:

- 1138 ▪ **CLIENT ID:** This is a required parameter. This is the unique identifier accompanied with
1139 each request that is presented to the AS's token and authorization endpoints. For this
1140 lab build, Motorola Solutions assigned a client ID of "ssoclient_nist" for the instances of
1141 their apps on the test devices.
- 1142 ▪ **CLIENT AUTHENTICATION:** May be set to **NONE**, **CLIENT SECRET** (for HTTP basic
1143 authentication), or **CLIENT TLS CERTIFICATE**. For native mobile app clients, there is no
1144 way to protect a client secret or private key and provide it to all instances of the app
1145 with any guarantee of confidentiality, as a user might be able to reverse-engineer the
1146 app to obtain any secrets delivered with it, or to debug the app to capture any secrets
1147 delivered at run-time. Therefore, a value of **NONE** is acceptable for native mobile apps,
1148 when mitigated with the use of PKCE. For web clients, servers are capable of protecting
1149 secrets; therefore, some form of client authentication should be required.
- 1150 ▪ **REDIRECT URIS:** Redirection URIs are the URIs to which the OAuth AS may redirect the
1151 resource owner's user agent after authorization is obtained. A redirect URI is used with
1152 the **Authorization Code** and **Implicit** grant types. This value is typically provided by the
1153 app developer to the AS administrator.
- 1154 ▪ **ALLOWED GRANT TYPES:** These are the allowed grant types for the client. For this lab
1155 build, the **Authorization Code** grant type was used exclusively.
- 1156 ▪ **DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER:** This is the Access Token Manager profile to be
1157 used for this client.
- 1158 ▪ **PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION:** This setting offers the option to override the global
1159 AS persistent grants settings for this client.
- 1160 ▪ **REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY:** This setting offers the option to override the global
1161 AS token rolling policy settings for this client.

1162 Once these values are set, click **Save** to store the client.

1163 This completes the required configuration for the AS's interactions with OAuth clients. The following
1164 section outlines the steps to set up the AS to authenticate users.

1165 3.4 How to Configure the OAuth 2 AS for Authentication

1166 In this section, the AS is configured to authenticate users locally or through federation with a SAML or
1167 OIDC IdP. These settings depend on the selection of roles and protocols, as shown in [Figure 3-2](#),
1168 therefore, ensure that has been completed before proceeding.

1169 3.4.1 How to Configure Direct Authentication

1170 The AS was configured to authenticate users with FIDO UAF authentication. This depends on the NNAS,
1171 Nok Nok Labs Gateway, and Nok Nok Labs UAF Plugin for PingFederate. See [Section 5](#) for the installation
1172 and configuration instructions for those components. This section assumes that those components have
1173 already been installed and configured.

1174 3.4.1.1 Configure Adapter Instance

- 1175 1. First, an instance of the FIDO UAF adapter must be configured. Click the **IdP Configuration**
1176 section tab, and then click **Adapters** under **Application Integration**.
- 1177 2. Click **Create New Instance** to create an IdP adapter instance. This will bring up the new tabbed
1178 screen shown in [Figure 3-11](#).
 - 1179 a. On the **Type** tab, the **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID** are internal identifiers and can
1180 be set to any meaningful values. The **TYPE** selection, “FIDO Adapter,” will not appear
1181 until the Nok Nok Labs UAF plugin has been successfully installed on the PingFederate
1182 server as described in [Section 5](#).

1183 Figure 3-11 Create Adapter Instance

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.2.0

1184

1185

1186

- b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, specify the URLs for the Nok Nok Labs API and Gateway endpoints (Figure 3-12).

1187

1188

1189

- i. The **NNL SERVER POLICY NAME** field can be used to select a custom policy, if one has been defined on the Nok Nok Labs server; for this build, the default policy was used.

1190 Figure 3-12 FIDO Adapter Settings

Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance

Complete the configuration necessary to look up user security contexts in your environment. This configuration was designed into the adapter for use at your site.

Set the details necessary for FIDO adapter configuration

Field Name	Field Value	Description
NNL SERVER AUTHENTICATION API ENDPOINT	https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:844	Enter NNL Server Authentication Endpoint
NNL GATEWAY API ENDPOINT	https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:844	Enter NNL Gateway Endpoint
NNL SERVER POLICY NAME	default	Enter Policy Name Configured on NNL Server
TENANT IDENTIFIER	default	Enter Tenant Identifier
LOGIN PAGE RENDERING OPTION	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Embedded Frame <input type="radio"/> Render Login Web Page	Specify your rendering option

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.2.0

Cancel Previous Next

- 1191
- 1192 c. The **Extended Contract** tab was also left as the default for the adapter, which provides
- 1193 the **riskscore**, **transactionid**, **transactiontext**, and **username** values (Figure 3-13). If de-
- 1194 sired, additional attributes could be added to the contract and looked up in a user direc-
- 1195 tory, based on the username returned from the adapter.

1196 Figure 3-13 FIDO Adapter Contract

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. A user profile icon is visible in the top right. The main content area is titled 'Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance'. Below this title is a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Type', 'IdP Adapter', 'Extended Contract', 'Adapter Attributes' (which is currently selected), 'Adapter Contract Mapping', and 'Summary'. A descriptive paragraph explains that this adapter type supports creating an Extended Adapter Contract after initial deployment. Below the description is a 'Core Contract' section with four input fields: 'riskscore', 'transactionid', 'transactiontext', and 'username'. Underneath is an 'Extend the Contract' section with a text input field and an 'Add' button. At the bottom right of the main content area, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next'. A sidebar on the left contains navigation links for 'MAIN', 'IdP Configuration', 'SP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. The footer of the sidebar contains copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'.

1197

1198

1199

1200

1201

1202

1203

- d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for **username**. Pseudonyms were not used in the lab build, but a selection is required on this tab.
- e. There is no need to configure an adapter contract, unless attributes have been added on the **Extended Contract** tab. Clicking **Done** and then **Save** completes the configuration of the adapter. Clicking the adapter name in the list of adapters brings up the Adapter Instance **Summary** tab, which lists all of the configured settings (Figure 3-14).

1204 Figure 3-14 FIDO Adapter Instance Summary

Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance

IdP adapter instance summary information.

Create Adapter Instance

Type	IdP Adapter	Extended Contract	Adapter Attributes	Adapter Contract Mapping	Summary
Type					
Instance Name	fidoonly				
Instance Id	fidoonly				
Type	FIDO Adapter				
Class Name	com.noknok.adapter.ping.FidoAdapter				
Parent Instance Name	None				
IdP Adapter					
NNL Server Authentication API Endpoint	https://noknok.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com:8443/htmlV2/sauth				
NNL Gateway API Endpoint	https://noknok.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com:8443/htmlgateway/html				
NNL Server Policy Name	default				
Tenant Identifier	default				
Extended Contract					
Attribute	riskscore				
Attribute	transactiontext				
Attribute	transactionid				
Attribute	username				
Adapter Attributes					
Mask all OGNL expression log values	false				
Pseudonym	username				
Adapter Contract Mapping					
Attribute Sources & User Lookup					
Data Sources	(None)				
Adapter Contract Fulfillment					
riskscore	riskscore (Adapter)				
transactiontext	transactiontext (Adapter)				
transactionid	transactionid (Adapter)				
username	username (Adapter)				
Issuance Criteria					
Criterion	(None)				

Cancel Previous

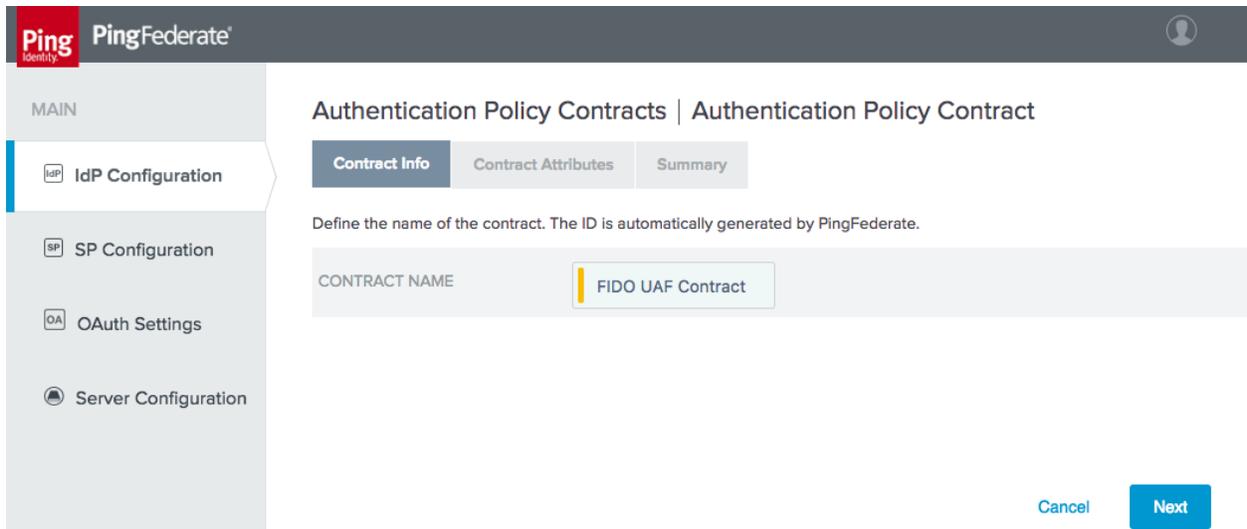
1205

1206 Some additional configurations are needed to tie this authentication adapter to the issuance of an
 1207 OAuth token. It is possible to directly map the adapter to the access token context, but because the
 1208 adapter will be incorporated into an authentication policy in this case, an Authentication Policy Contract
 1209 Mapping is used instead.

1210 3.4.1.2 Create Policy Contract

- 1211 1. To create a Policy Contract, navigate to the **IdP Configuration** section tab, and select **Policy**
 1212 **Contracts** under **Authentication Policies**. A policy contract defines the set of attributes that will
 1213 be provided by an authentication policy.
- 1214 2. Click **Create New Contract**.
- 1215 a. On the **Contract Info** tab, give the contract a meaningful name (Figure 3-15).

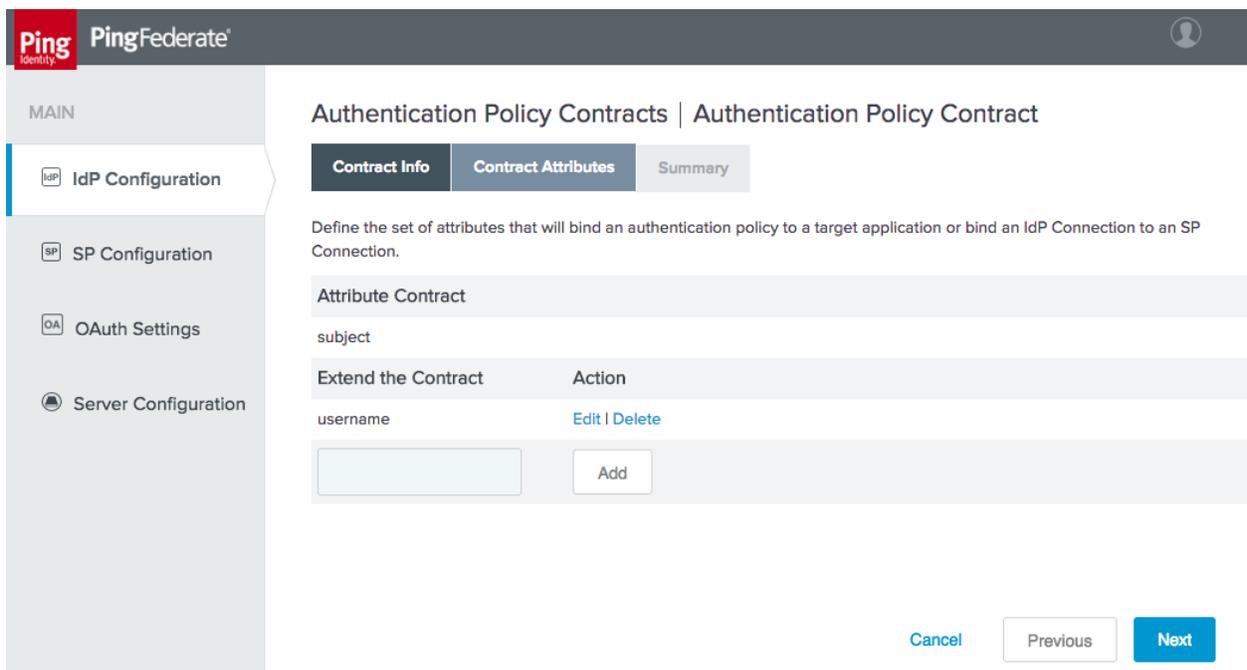
1216 Figure 3-15 Policy Contract Information



1217

1218 b. On the **Contract Attributes** tab, add a value called **username** (Figure 3-16).

1219 Figure 3-16 Policy Contract Attributes

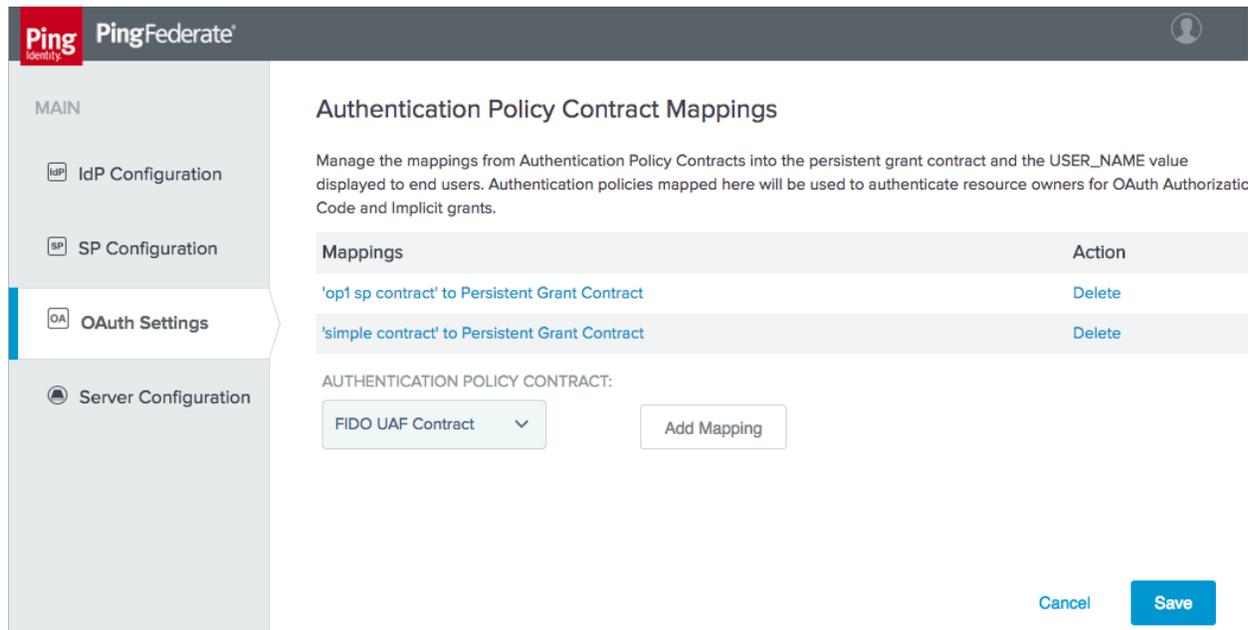


1220

1221 c. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to save the new contract.

1222 **3.4.1.3 Create Policy Contract Mapping**

- 1223 1. Create a mapping from the policy contract to the OAuth persistent grant. Click the **OAuth**
- 1224 **Settings** section tab, and then click **Authentication Policy Contract Mapping** under **Token &**
- 1225 **Attribute Mapping**.
- 1226 a. Select the newly-created policy contract, and then click **Add Mapping** (Figure 3-17).

1227 **Figure 3-17 Create Authentication Policy Contract Mapping**

- 1228
- 1229 2. An attribute source could be added at this point to look up additional user attributes, but this is
- 1230 not necessary. Click **Save**.
- 1231 3. Skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab.
- 1232 4. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both **USER_KEY** and **USER_NAME** to the **subject** value
- 1233 returned from the policy contract (Figure 3-18).

1234 **Figure 3-18 Authentication Policy Contract Fulfillment**

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

Contract	Source	Value	Actions
USER_KEY	Authentication Policy Contract	subject	None available
USER_NAME	Authentication Policy Contract	subject	None available

1235

1236 5. No issuance criteria were specified. Click **Next**, and then click **Save** to complete the mapping.1237 **3.4.1.4 Create Access Token Mapping**

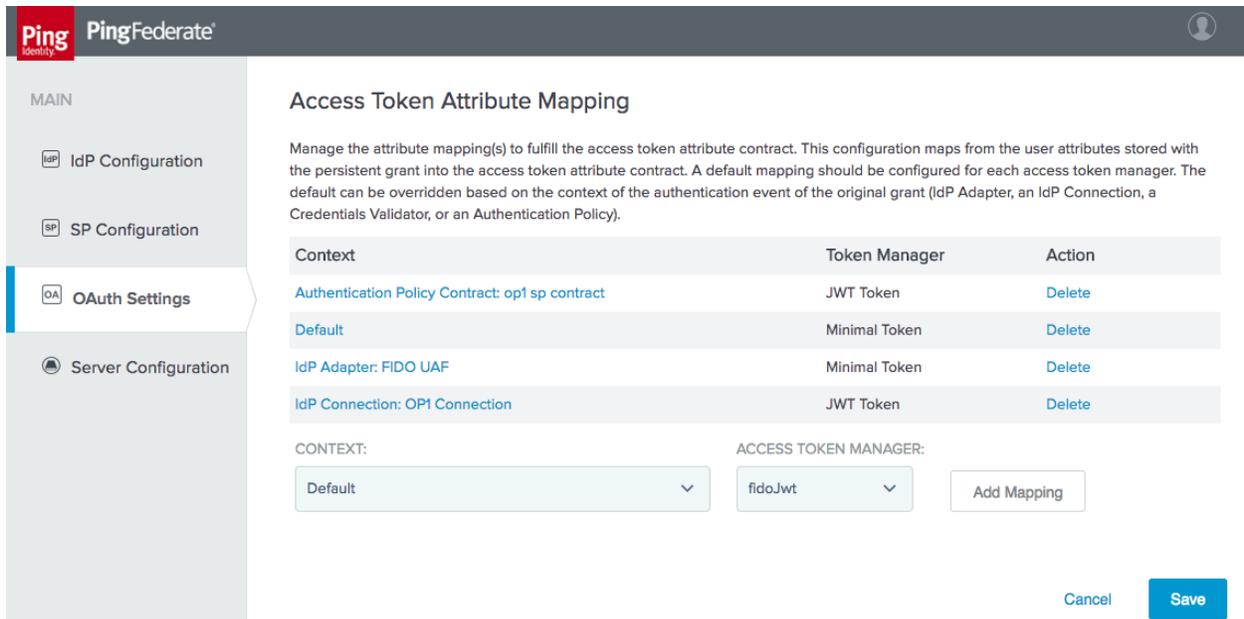
1238 Finally, an access token mapping needs to be created. In this simple case, the adapter only provides a
 1239 single attribute (username) and it is stored in the persistent grant, so a default attribute mapping can be
 1240 used.

1241 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, under **Token & Attribute Mapping**, click **Access Token**
 1242 **Mapping**.

1243 a. Select **Default** for the **CONTEXT** (Figure 3-19).

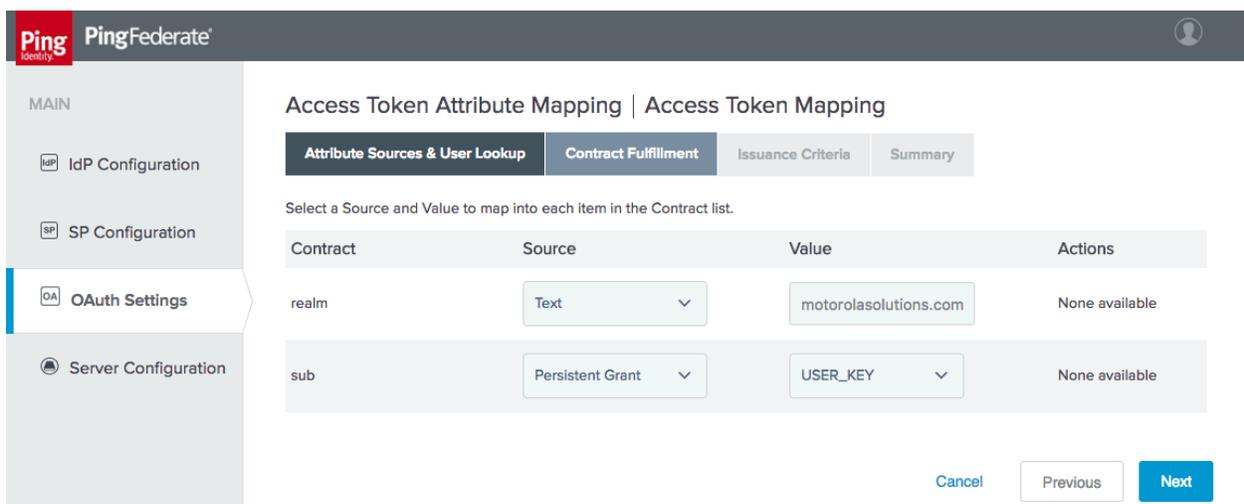
1244 b. Select the **ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER** created previously (Figure 3-19).

1245 **Figure 3-19 Create Access Token Attribute Mapping**



- 1246
- 1247 c. Click **Add Mapping**.
- 1248 d. Click **Next** to Skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab.
- 1249 e. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, configure sources and values for the **realm** and **sub**
- 1250 contracts (Figure 3-20). In this case, **realm** is set to the text string **motorolasolu-**
- 1251 **tions.com**. Click **Next**.

1252 **Figure 3-20 Access Token Mapping Contract Fulfillment**



1253

- 1254 f. Click **Next** through the **Issuance Criteria** tab, and then click **Save**.
- 1255 2. To complete the setup for direct authentication, the FIDO UAF adapter needs to be included
- 1256 in an authentication policy as described in Section 3.4.4.2.

1257 **3.4.2 How to Configure SAML Authentication**

1258 This section explains how to configure the AS to accept SAML authentication assertions from a SAML 2.0

1259 IdP. This configuration is for RP-initiated SAML web browser SSO, where the authentication flow begins

1260 at the AS and the user is redirected to the IdP. Here, it is assumed that all of the steps outlined in

1261 [Section 3.4](#) have been completed, particularly enabling the SP role and protocols.

1262 **3.4.2.1 Create IdP Connection**

1263 Establishing the relationship between the AS and IdP requires coordination between the administrators

1264 of the two servers, which will typically belong to two separate organizations. The administrators of the

1265 SAML IdP and RP will need to exchange their **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** values (available on the

1266 **Federation Info** tab under **Server Settings**) to complete the configuration. The IdP administrator must

1267 also provide the signing certificate of the IdP. If assertions will be encrypted, the AS administrator will

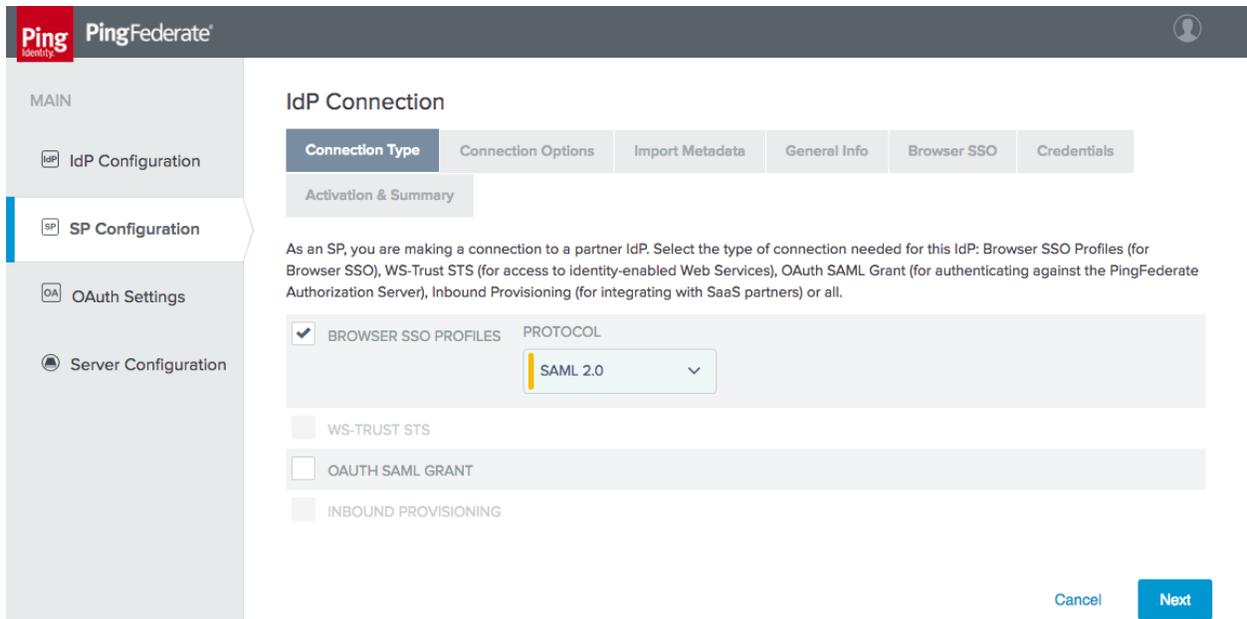
1268 need to provide the IdP administrator with the certificate to be used for the public key. Alternatively,

1269 administrators can export their SAML metadata and provide it to the other party to automate parts of

1270 the setup.

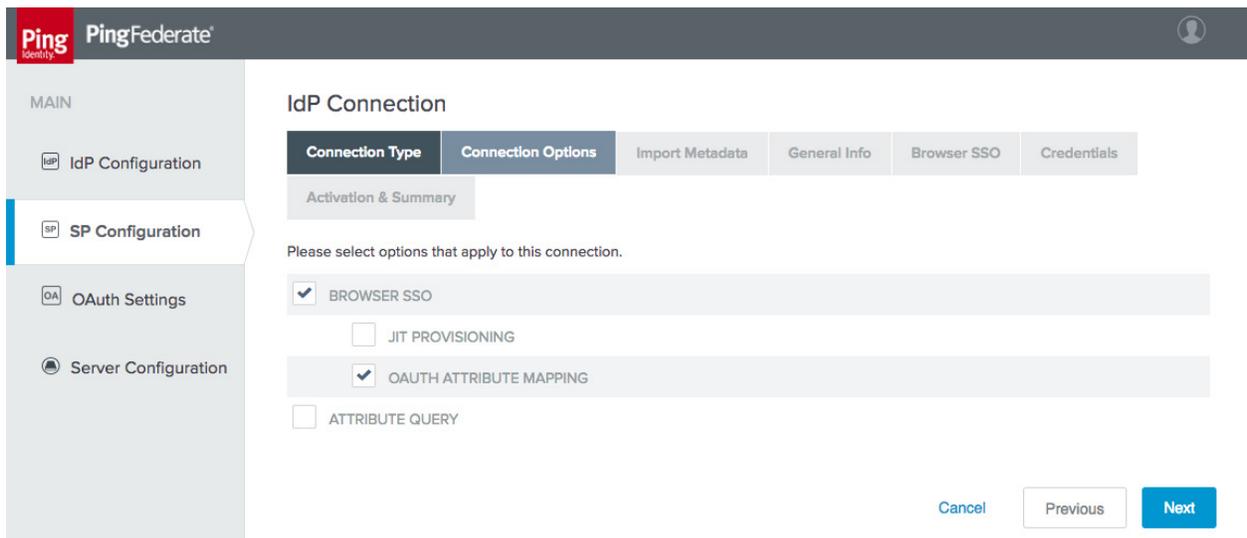
- 1271 1. On the **SP Configuration** section tab, click **Create New** under **IdP Connections**.
- 1272 a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and choose **SAML 2.0** for
- 1273 the **PROTOCOL** (Figure 3-21). If these options are not present, ensure that the roles are
- 1274 selected correctly in **Server Settings**.

1275 **Figure 3-21 Create IdP Connection**



- 1276
- 1277 b. On the **Connection Options** tab, select **BROWSER SSO**, and then under it, **OAUTH AT-**
- 1278 **TRIBUTE MAPPING** (Figure 3-22).

1279 **Figure 3-22 IdP Connection Options**



- 1280
- 1281 c. Metadata import was not configured for the lab build; therefore, skip the **Import**
- 1282 **Metadata** tab.

- 1283 d. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)** and **BASE**
- 1284 **URL** of the IdP, and provide a **CONNECTION NAME** (Figure 3-23).

1285 **Figure 3-23 IdP Connection General Info**

The screenshot shows the 'IdP Connection' configuration page in PingFederate. The page has a dark header with the 'Ping Identity' logo and 'PingFederate' text. A left sidebar contains navigation links: 'MAIN', 'IdP Configuration', 'SP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. The main content area is titled 'IdP Connection' and features a tabbed interface with 'General Info' selected. Below the tabs is an 'Activation & Summary' section with explanatory text. The form contains several input fields: 'PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)' with the value 'idp1.spsd.msso', 'CONNECTION NAME' with 'idp1.spsd.msso', 'VIRTUAL SERVER IDS' with an empty field and an 'Add' button, 'BASE URL' with 'https://idp1.spsd.msso:9031', 'COMPANY', 'CONTACT NAME', 'CONTACT NUMBER', and 'CONTACT EMAIL', all currently empty. There is also an 'ERROR MESSAGE' field. At the bottom, the 'LOGGING MODE' is set to 'STANDARD' with radio buttons for 'NONE', 'STANDARD', 'ENHANCED', and 'FULL'. Navigation buttons 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next' are located at the bottom right.

- 1286
- 1287 e. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**. The Browser SSO setup has multiple sub-pages.
- 1288
- 1289 i. On the **SAML Profiles** tab, select **SP-Initiated SSO**. The **User-Session Creation**
- 1290 settings are summarized on the **Summary** tab; they extract the user ID and
- 1291 email address from the SAML assertion (Figure 3-24).

1292 Figure 3-24 IdP Connection – User-Session Creation

Identity Mapping

Enable Account Mapping	true
------------------------	------

Attribute Contract

Attribute	SAML_SUBJECT
Attribute	mail
Attribute	uid

Target Session Mapping

Adapter instance name	instanceAdapterName
Authentication policy contract name	myContractName

Adapter Instance

Selected adapter	instanceAdapterName
------------------	---------------------

Adapter Data Store

Attribute location	Use only the attributes available in the SSO Assertion
--------------------	--

Adapter Contract Fulfillment

uid	uid (Assertion)
mail	mail (Assertion)
subject	SAML_SUBJECT (Assertion)

Issuance Criteria

Criterion	(None)
-----------	--------

Authentication Policy Contract

Selected contract	myContractName
-------------------	----------------

Attribute Retrieval

Attribute location	Use only the attributes available in the SSO Assertion
--------------------	--

Contract Fulfillment

uid	uid (Assertion)
mail	mail (Assertion)
subject	SAML_SUBJECT (Assertion)

Issuance Criteria

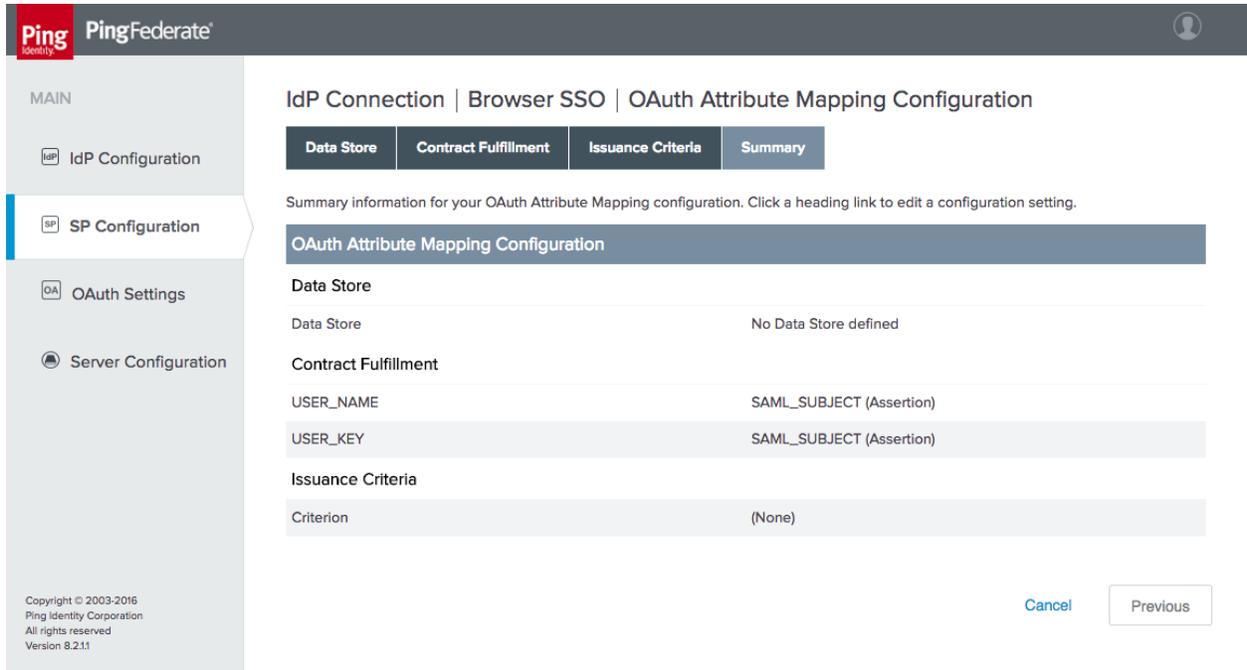
Criterion	(None)
-----------	--------

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation All rights reserved Version 8.2.11

Cancel Previous

- 1294 ii. On the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** tab, select **MAP DIRECTLY INTO**
- 1295 **PERSISTENT GRANT**. Configure the OAuth attribute mapping as shown in Figure
- 1296 3-25. This maps both required values in the persistent grant context to the
- 1297 SAML subject. Click **Next**, then **Next** again to skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab. Click
- 1298 **Save**.

1299 **Figure 3-25 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping**



- 1300
- 1301 iii. Click **Next** to proceed to the **Protocol Settings** tab. The **Protocol Settings** config-
- 1302 ure specifics of the SAML protocol, such as the allowed bindings. Configure
- 1303 these as shown in Figure 3-26. When finished, click **Save**, which will return you
- 1304 to the **Browser SSO** tab of the **IdP Connection** settings.

1305 Figure 3-26 IdP Connection – Protocol Settings

Ping Identity PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration**
- OAuth Settings
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

IdP Connection | Browser SSO | Protocol Settings

SSO Service URLs | Allowable SAML Bindings | Overrides | Signature Policy | Encryption Policy | **Summary**

Summary information for your Protocol Settings configuration. Click a heading link to edit a configuration setting.

Protocol Settings

SSO Service URLs

Endpoint	URL: /ldp/SSO.saml2 (POST)
Endpoint	URL: /ldp/SSO.saml2 (Redirect)

Allowable SAML Bindings

Artifact	false
POST	true
Redirect	true
SOAP	false

Overrides

Signature Policy

Sign AuthN requests over POST and Redirect	false
Require digitally signed SAML Assertion	false

Encryption Policy

Status	Inactive
--------	----------

Cancel Previous

1306

1307

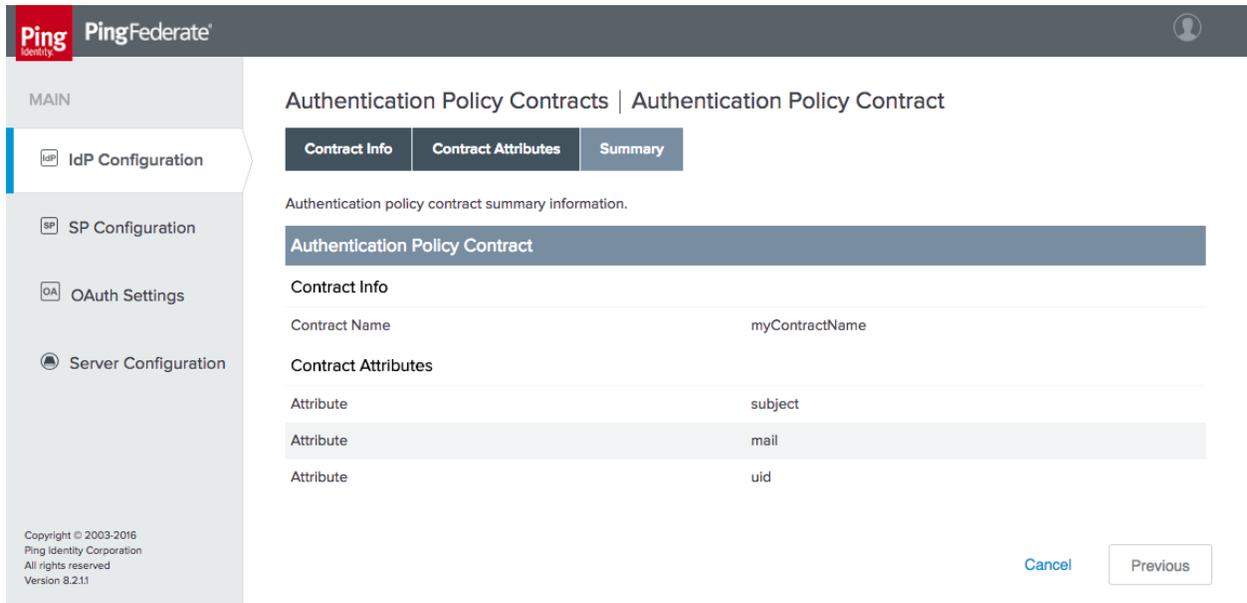
1308

- f. Click **Next**. On the **Credentials** tab, the IdP's signing certificate can be uploaded. This is not necessary if the certificate is signed by a trusted CA.

1309 **3.4.2.2 Create Policy Contract**

- 1310 1. Create a policy contract as described in [Section 3.4.1.2](#), with the attributes **subject**, **mail**, and **uid**
1311 (Figure 3-27).

1312 **Figure 3-27 Policy Contract for SAML RP**



1313

1314 **3.4.2.3 Create Policy Contract Mapping**

- 1315 1. Create an OAuth policy contract mapping for the newly created policy as described in
1316 [Section 3.4.1.3](#), mapping **USER_NAME** and **USER_KEY** to **subject** (Figure 3-28).

1317 Figure 3-28 Contract Mapping for SAML RP

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

1318

- 1319 2. To complete the setup for SAML authentication, the FIDO UAF adapter needs to be included in
1320 an authentication policy as described in [Section 3.4.4.2](#).

1321 3.4.3 How to Configure OIDC Authentication

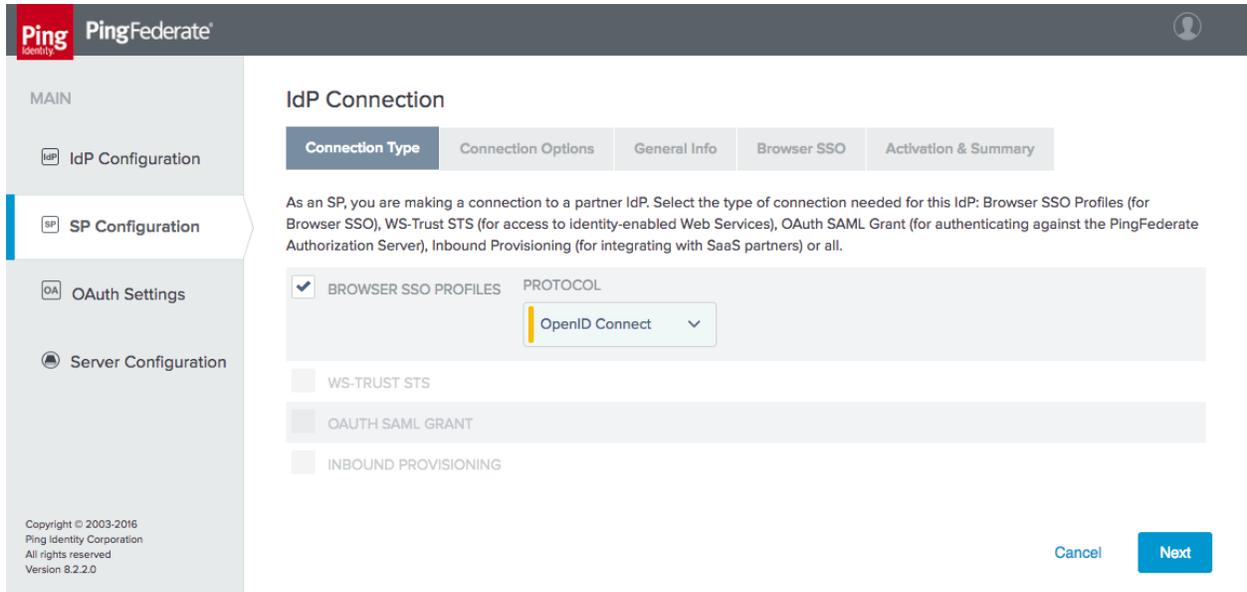
1322 As with the configuration of a SAML IdP connection, integrating the AS with an OIDC IdP requires
1323 coordination between the administrators of the two systems. The administrator of the IdP must create
1324 an OIDC client registration before the connection can be configured on the AS side. The AS administrator
1325 must provide the redirect URI and, if encryption of the ID Token is desired, a public key. Unlike with
1326 SAML, there is no metadata file to exchange; however, if the IdP supports the OIDC discovery endpoint,
1327 the client can automatically obtain many of the required configuration settings from the discovery URL.

1328 This section assumes that the AS role and OIDC SP support have been enabled via **Server Settings**, as
1329 described in [Section 3.4](#). This section also uses the same authentication policy contract as the SAML
1330 authentication implementation. Create the policy contract as described in [Section 3.4.2.2](#), if it does not
1331 already exist.

1332 3.4.3.1 Create IdP Connection

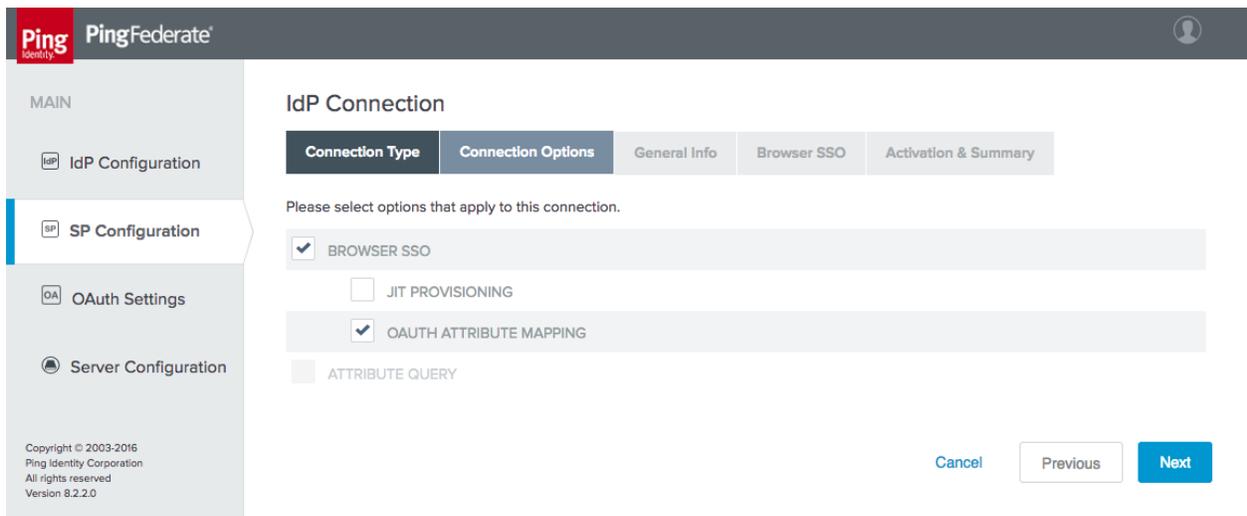
- 1333 1. On the **SP Configuration** section tab, click **Create New** under **IdP Connections**.
- 1334 a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and then under it, select
1335 **OpenID Connect** for the **PROTOCOL** (Figure 3-29).

1336 Figure 3-29 IdP Connection Type



- 1337
- 1338 b. On the **Connection Options** tab, select **BROWSER SSO**, and then under it, select **OAUTH**
- 1339 **ATTRIBUTE MAPPING** (Figure 3-30).

1340 Figure 3-30 IdP Connection Options



- 1341
- 1342 c. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **ISSUER** value for the IdP (Figure 3-31). This is the
- 1343 **BASE URL** setting available on the **Federation Info** tab, under the **Server Configuration**
- 1344 section tab on the IdP. Then click **Load Metadata**, which causes the AS to query the IdP's

1345 discovery endpoint. The message “Metadata successfully loaded” should appear. Pro-
 1346 vide a **CONNECTION NAME**, and enter the **CLIENT ID** and **CLIENT SECRET** provided by
 1347 the IdP administrator.

1348 **Figure 3-31 IdP Connection General Info**

PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration**
- OAuth Settings
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016
 Ping Identity Corporation
 All rights reserved
 Version 8.2.2.0

IdP Connection

Connection Type	Connection Options	General Info	Browser SSO	Activation & Summary
-----------------	--------------------	--------------	-------------	----------------------

This information identifies your partner's unique connection identifier (Issuer). Connection Name represents the plain-language identifier for this connection. The OpenID Provider Metadata can be loaded from the issuer discovery endpoint. The Base URL may be used to simplify configuration of partner endpoints.

ISSUER: Metadata successfully loaded.

CONNECTION NAME:

CLIENT ID:

CLIENT SECRET:

BASE URL:

COMPANY:

CONTACT NAME:

CONTACT NUMBER:

CONTACT EMAIL:

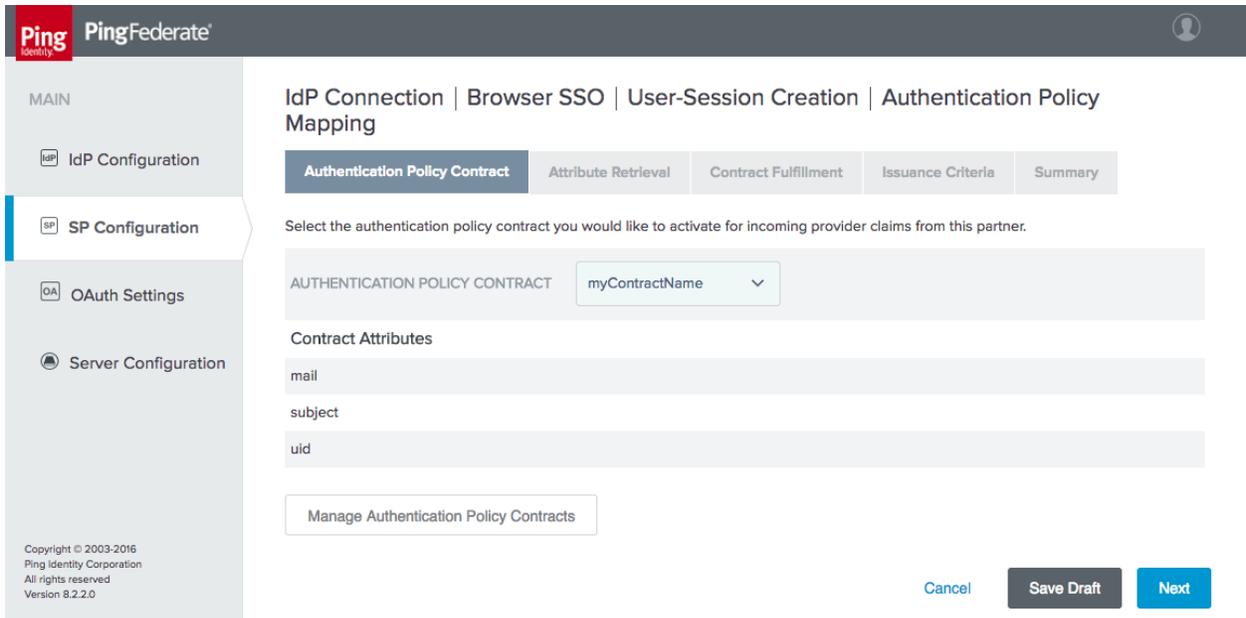
ERROR MESSAGE:

LOGGING MODE: NONE STANDARD ENHANCED FULL

- 1349
- 1350 d. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**, then click **Configure User-Ses-**
 1351 **sion Creation**. The **User-Session Creation** page will appear.
- 1352 i. On the **Target Session Mapping** tab, click **Map New Authentication Policy**.

- 1353 ii. On the **Authentication Policy Contract** tab, select the **AUTHENTICATION POLICY**
- 1354 **CONTRACT** created in [Section 3.4.2.2](#) (in the example shown in Figure 3-32, it is
- 1355 called **myContractName**). If the policy contract has not been created, click **Man-**
- 1356 **age Authentication Policy Contracts**, and create it now.

1357 **Figure 3-32 IdP Connection Authentication Policy Contract**



- 1358
- 1359 iii. On the **Attribute Retrieval** tab, leave the default setting (use only the attributes
- 1360 available in the provider claims).
- 1361 iv. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map the **mail**, **subject**, and **uid** attributes to the
- 1362 **email**, **sub**, and **sub** provider claims (Figure 3-33).

1363 **Figure 3-33 IdP Connection Policy Contract Mapping**

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

1364

1365

v. No **Issuance Criteria** were configured; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab.

1366

vi. Click **Next**, then **Done**, and then click **Done** again to exit the **User-Session Creation** tab.

1367

1368

vii. On the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** tab, select **Map Directly into Persistent Grant**, and then click **Configure OAuth Attribute Mapping**.

1369

1370

viii. Click **Next** to skip the Data Store tab. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both **USER_NAME** and **USER_KEY** to the **sub** provider claim (Figure 3-34).

1371

1372 Figure 3-34 IdP Connection OAuth Attribute Mapping

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.2.0

1373

1374

1375

1376

1377

1378

- ix. Click **Done** to exit the **OAuth Attribute Mapping Configuration** setup. The **Protocol Settings** should be automatically populated through the information gathered from the discovery endpoint (Figure 3-35). If necessary, the scopes to be requested can be customized on the **Protocol Settings** tab; in the lab, these settings were left at the default.

1379 Figure 3-35 IdP Connection Protocol Settings

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.2.0

OpenID Provider Info	
Scopes	oob-reg address test phone reg composite openid profile name email
Authorization Endpoint	https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/as/authorization.oauth2
Authentication Scheme	Post
Token Endpoint	https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/as/token.oauth2
Userinfo Endpoint	https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/idp/userinfo.openid
JWKS URL	https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/pf/JWKS

1380

1381

- x. Click **Done** to exit the **Browser SSO** configuration setup.

1382

1383

1384

- e. On the **Activation & Summary** tab, a **Redirect URI** will be generated (Figure 3-36). Provide this information to the IdP administrator, as it needs to be configured in the OpenID Client settings on the IdP side.

1385

1386

- i. The **Connection Status** can also be configured to **ACTIVE** or **INACTIVE** on this tab.

1387 **Figure 3-36 IdP Connection Activation and Summary**

IdP Connection

Summary information for your IdP connection. Click a heading in a section to edit a particular configuration setting.

Connection Status: ACTIVE INACTIVE

Redirect URI: `https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/eyJpc3MIOLJodHRwc2pL1wv3AxLmxc2QubXNzbo5MDMxIn0/cb.openid`

Summary

IdP Connection	
Connection Type	
Connection Role	IdP
Browser SSO Profiles	true
Protocol	OpenID Connect
WS-Trust STS	false
OAuth SAML Grant	false
Inbound Provisioning	false

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.11

1388

1389 f. Click **Save** to complete the **IdP Connection** setup.1390

3.4.3.2 Create the Policy Contract Mapping

1391 The same policy contract mapping created earlier for the SAML integration can also be used for OIDC
 1392 integration, as the attribute names are identical. If this policy contract mapping has not already been
 1393 created, refer to [Section 3.4.2.3](#) to create it.

1394

3.4.4 How to Configure the Authentication Policy

1395

3.4.4.1 Install the Domain Selector Plugin

1396 When a single AS is integrated with multiple IdPs, it needs a means of determining which IdP can
 1397 authenticate each user. In the lab build, a domain selector is used to determine whether the AS should
 1398 authenticate the user locally, redirect to the SAML IdP, or redirect to the OIDC IdP. The domain selector
 1399 prompts the user to enter the user's email address or domain. The specified domain is used to select
 1400 which branch of the authentication policy should be applied. Upon successful authentication, the
 1401 domain selector sets a cookie in the browser to persist the domain selection to avoid prompting the
 1402 user each time that the user authenticates.

1403 PingFederate includes sample code for a Domain Selector plugin. Before the Domain Selector can be
 1404 used in an authentication policy, it must be built. The source code for the selector is located under the
 1405 PingFederate directory, in the directory `sdk/plugin-src/authentication-selector-example`.

1406 1. Complete the following steps to build the selector:

1407 a. Edit the `build.local.properties` file in the PingFederate SDK directory to set the tar-
 1408 get plugin as follows:

1409 `target-plugin.name=authentication-selector-example`

1410 b. Run the following commands to build and install the plugin:

1411 `$ ant clean-plugin`

1412 `$ ant jar-plugin`

1413 `$ ant deploy-plugin`

1414 `$ sudo service pingfederate restart`

1415 2. Once installed, the Domain Selector can be configured with the required values. On the **IdP**
 1416 **Configuration** section tab, click **Selectors** under **Authentication Policies**.

1417 3. Click **Create New Instance**.

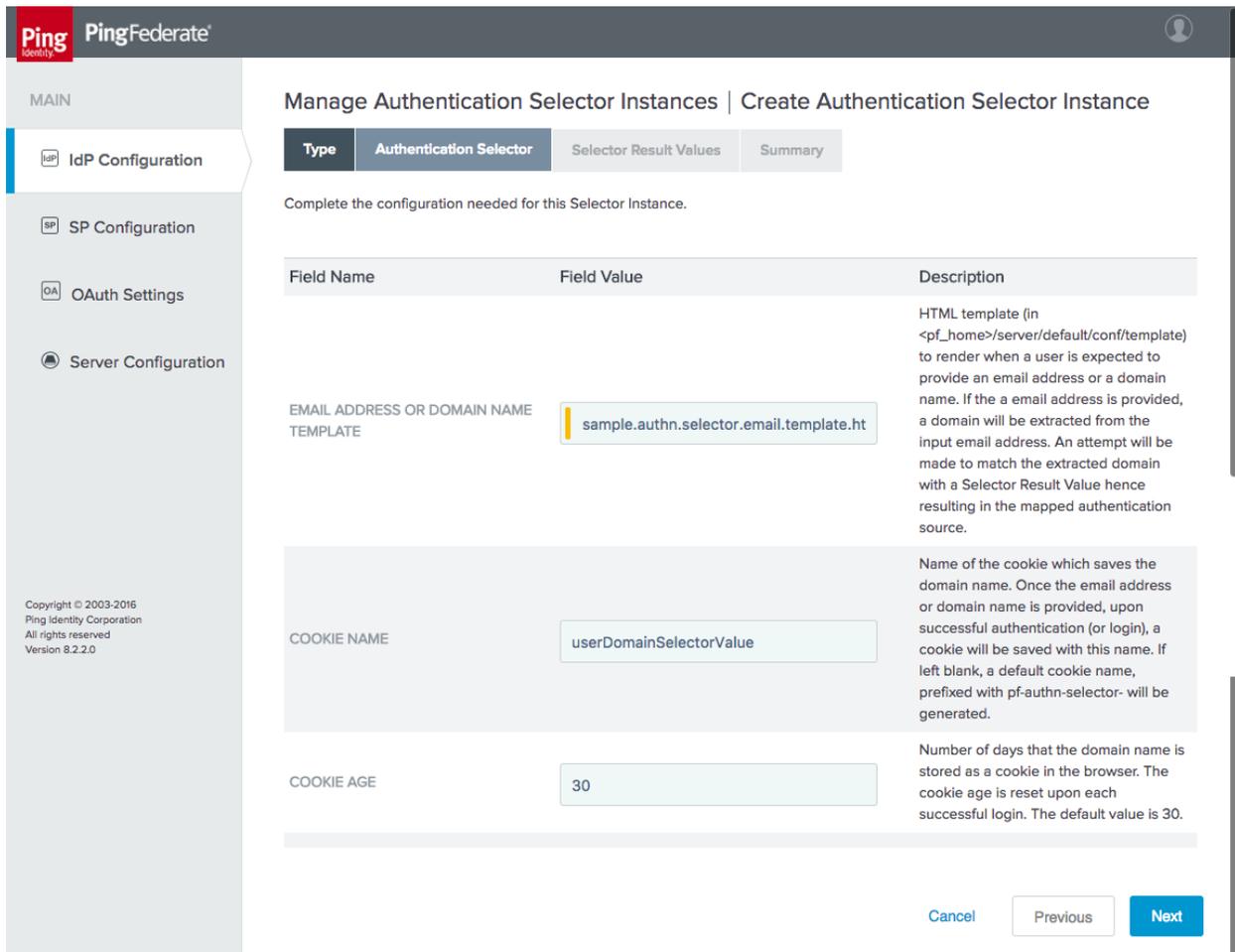
1418 a. On the **Type** tab, provide a meaningful name and ID for the selector instance (Figure
 1419 3-37). For the **TYPE**, select **Domain Authentication Selector**.

1420 **Figure 3-37 Authentication Selector Instance**

1421

- 1422 b. The next tab, **Authentication Selector**, prompts for the HyperText Markup Language
 1423 (HTML) template for the page that will prompt the user to enter the domain or email
 1424 address (Figure 3-38). The default value will use the template delivered with the
 1425 adapter; if desired, a custom template can be used instead to modify the appearance of
 1426 the page. Provide a cookie name, which will be used to persist the domain selection. Fi-
 1427 nally, the age of the cookie can be modified. By default, users will be prompted again to
 1428 enter their domain after 30 days.

1429 **Figure 3-38 Authentication Selector Details**



- 1430
- 1431 c. On the **Selector Result Values** tab, specify the expected domain values (Figure 3-39).
 1432 When the domain selector is used in an access policy, different policy branches will be
 1433 created for each of these values. In this case, if the domain is *motorolasolutions.com*,
 1434 the user will be authenticated locally; if it is *lpsd.mssso* or *spsd.mssso*, the user will be re-
 1435 directed to the corresponding IdP to authenticate.

1436 Figure 3-39 Selector Result Values

The screenshot shows the PingFederate interface for managing authentication selector instances. The sidebar on the left includes a 'MAIN' section and several configuration options: 'IdP Configuration' (selected), 'SP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. The main content area is titled 'Manage Authentication Selector Instances | Create Authentication Selector Instance'. It features a table with the following data:

Type	Authentication Selector	Selector Result Values	Summary
		lpsd.msso	Edit Delete
		motorolasolutions.com	Edit Delete
		spsd.msso	Edit Delete

Below the table, there is a text input field and an 'Add' button. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next' buttons. The footer of the sidebar contains copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'.

1437

1438 d. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the selector configuration.1439

3.4.4.2 Define the Authentication Policy

1440 1. On the IdP Configuration page, click **Policies** under **Authentication Policies**.1441 a. Select the three checkboxes at the top of the **Manage Authentication Policies** page,
1442 which are shown in Figure 3-40.

1443 Figure 3-40 Policy Settings

The screenshot shows three policy settings, each with a checked checkbox:

- ENABLE IDP AUTHENTICATION POLICIES
- ENABLE SP AUTHENTICATION POLICIES
- FAIL IF POLICY ENGINE FINDS NO AUTHENTICATION SOURCE

1444

1445 b. Select the **Domain Selector** as the first element in the policy (Figure 3-41). This will cre-
1446 ate policy branches for the three values defined for the policy selector.1447 i. Select the corresponding authentication mechanism for each domain. The ex-
1448 ample shown in Figure 3-41 uses the IdP connections for the **lpsd.msso** and
1449 **spsd.msso**, as well as the “fidoonly” adapter for local authentication of users in
1450 the **motorolasolutions.com** domain.

1451 **Figure 3-41 Authentication Policy**

The screenshot displays three rows of configuration for an authentication policy. Each row represents a different domain and includes the following elements:

- Row 1:** DomainSelector - (Selec v, lpsd.msso, op1.lpsd.msso - (IdP v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the adapter dropdown is an 'Options' link. Below the 'Fail' status is a 'Success Rules' section with a 'myContractName v' dropdown and a 'Contract Mapping' label.
- Row 2:** motorolasolutions.com, fidoonly - (Adapter) v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the adapter dropdown is an 'Options' link. Below the 'Fail' status is a 'Success Rules' section with a 'fidoAuthContract v' dropdown and a 'Contract Mapping' label.
- Row 3:** spsd.msso, idp1.spsd.msso - (Id v, Fail, -- DONE -- v. Below the adapter dropdown is an 'Options' link. Below the 'Fail' status is a 'Success Rules' section with a 'myContractName v' dropdown and a 'Contract Mapping' label.

1452

1453

1454

1455

- ii. There is no need to specify **Options** or **Success Rules**. For the two IdP connections, apply the **myContractName** policy contract upon success, with the contract mapping configured as shown in Figure 3-42.

1456 Figure 3-42 Policy Contract Mapping for IdP Connections

Copyright © 2009-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

1457

1458

1459

- c. For the “fidoonly” adapter, apply the **fidoAuthContract** with the contract mapping shown in Figure 3-43.

1460 Figure 3-43 Policy Contract Mapping for Local Authentication

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.11

1461

1462 This completes the configuration of the AS.

1463

4 How to Install and Configure the Identity Providers

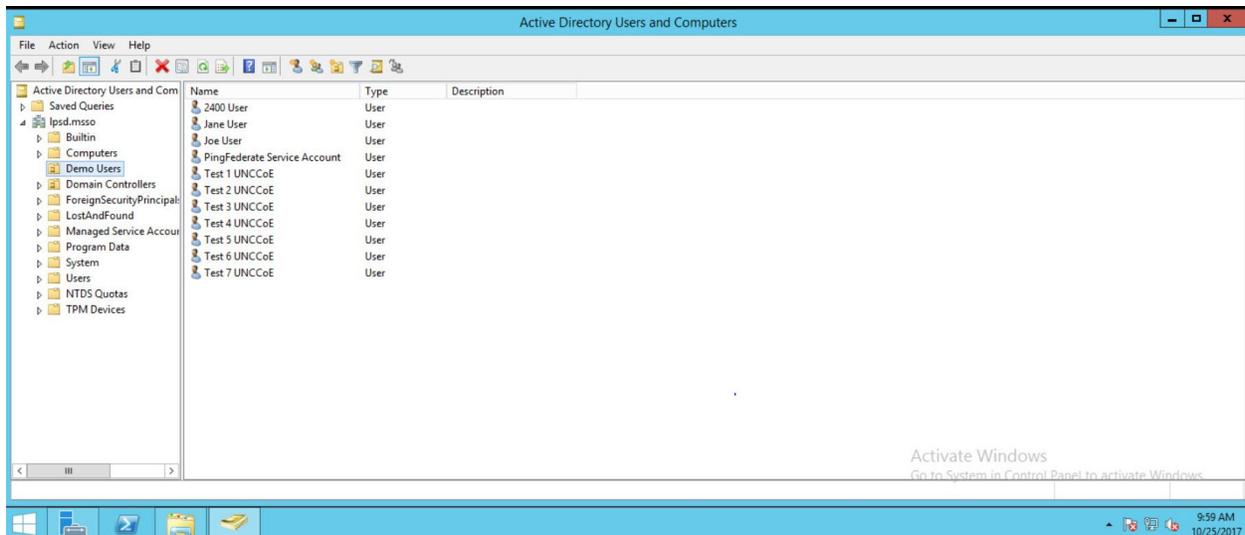
1464 PingFederate 8.3.2.0 was used for the SAML and OIDC IdP installs. The system requirements and
 1465 installation process for PingFederate are identical to the OAuth AS installation documentation in
 1466 [Section 3.1](#) and [Section 3.2](#). The IdP configuration sections pick up the installation process after the
 1467 software has been installed, at the selection of roles and protocols.

1468

4.1 How to Configure the User Store

1469 Each IdP uses its own AD forest as a user store. AD was chosen due to its widespread use across many
 1470 organizations. For the purposes of this project, any LDAP directory could have served the same purpose,
 1471 but in a typical organization, AD would be used for other functions, such as workstation login and
 1472 authorization to apps, shared drives, printers, and other services. The **Active Directory Users and
 1473 Computers** console (Figure 4-1) was used to create user accounts and set attributes.

1474 Figure 4-1 Active Directory Users and Computers



1475

1476 In addition to the user accounts that log into the lab apps, a service account must be created to enable
 1477 the IdP to access and query the AD. This user's LDAP Distinguished Name (DN) and password (in the
 1478 example shown in Figure 4-1) are used in the PingFederate directory integration described below.

1479 The procedure for connecting a PingFederate IdP to an LDAP directory is the same for a SAML or OIDC
 1480 IdP. Documentation is provided at

1481 [https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringLdapConn
 1482 action.html#concept_configuringLdapConnection](https://documentation.pingidentity.com/pingfederate/pf82/index.shtml#concept_configuringLdapConnection.html#concept_configuringLdapConnection).

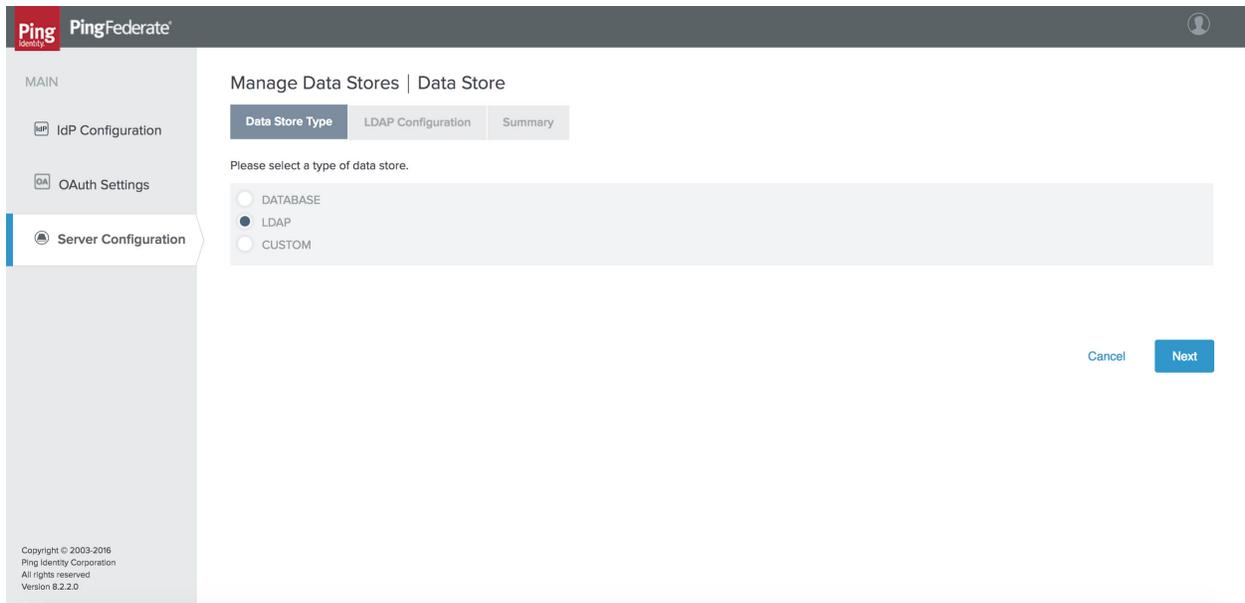
1483 1. To start the process, click the **Server Configuration** section tab on the left side of the
 1484 PingFederate administrative console. The screen shown in Figure 4-2 will appear.

1485 **Figure 4-2 Server Configuration**

1486

1487 2. Click **Data Stores** under **SYSTEM SETTINGS**.1488 3. On the next screen, click **Add New Data Store**.1489 a. The screen shown in Figure 4-3 will appear. On the **Data Store Type** tab, select **LDAP** for
1490 the data store type.1491 i. Click **Next**.

1492 Figure 4-3 Data Store Type



1493

1494

1495

1496

1497

- b. On the **LDAP Configuration** tab, enter the connection parameters for your AD or LDAP environment (Figure 4-4). Some notes on the fields on this tab are provided below. Click **Save** to exit the LDAP configuration screen once the required settings have been entered.

1498

1499

1500

1501

1502

1503

1504

1505

1506

1507

1508

1509

1510

- **HOSTNAME(S):** Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) or the complete Internet Protocol (IP) address of an AD domain controller. A port number can be specified if AD is running on non-standard ports.
- **LDAP TYPE:** This is the LDAP server in use—AD in this case.
- **BIND ANONYMOUSLY:** For AD environments, allowing anonymous BIND (Berkeley Internet Name Domain) is not recommended.
- **USER DN:** This is the Distinguished Name of the PingFederate user account created in AD; in this build architecture, this account is used only for querying AD, so it does not require any special privileges.
- **PASSWORD:** This is the password for the PingFederate AD user.
- **USE LDAPS:** This can be enabled if AD is configured to serve LDAP over TLS.
- **MASK VALUES IN LOG:** This prevents attributes returned from this data source from being exposed in server logs.

1511 **Figure 4-4 LDAP Data Store Configuration**

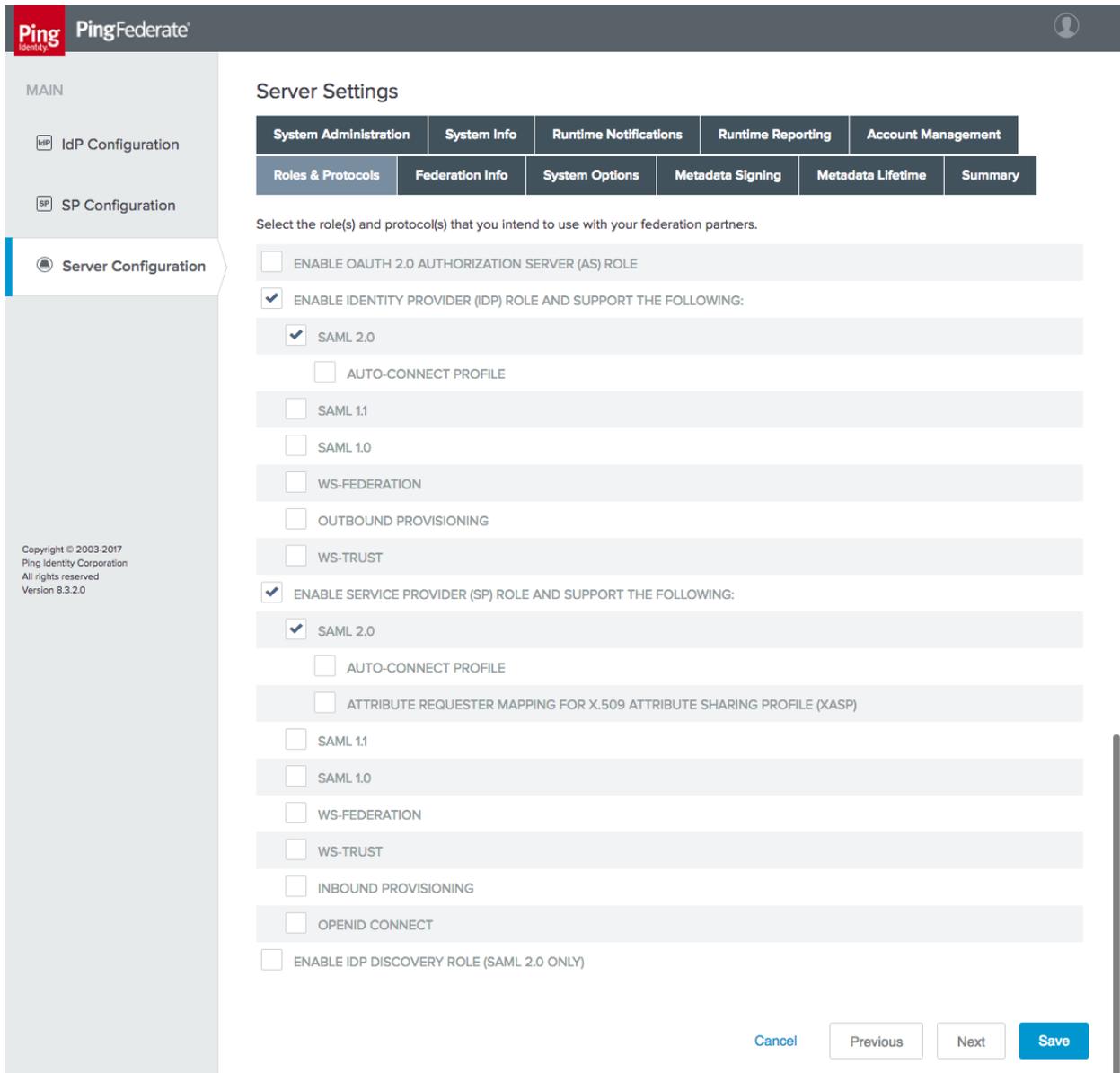
The screenshot displays the 'Manage Data Stores | Data Store' configuration interface in PingFederate. The left sidebar shows navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, OAuth Settings, and Server Configuration (selected). The main content area is titled 'Manage Data Stores | Data Store' and has three tabs: 'Data Store Type', 'LDAP Configuration' (active), and 'Summary'. Below the tabs, a message reads: 'Please provide the details for configuring this LDAP connection.' The configuration fields include: 'HOSTNAME(S)' (text input), 'LDAP TYPE' (dropdown menu set to 'Active Directory'), 'BIND ANONYMOUSLY' (checkbox), 'USER DN' (text input), 'PASSWORD' (text input), 'USE LDAPS' (checkbox), and 'MASK VALUES IN LOG' (checkbox). At the bottom left, there is a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', and 'Next'.

1512

1513 4.2 How to Install and Configure the SAML Identity Provider

- 1514 1. On the **Server Configuration** screen, click **Server Settings**.
- 1515 a. On the **Roles & Protocols** tab, enable roles and protocols to configure the server as a
- 1516 SAML IdP (Figure 4-5).

1517 Figure 4-5 Server Roles for SAML IdP



1518

1519
1520
1521
1522

- b. On the **Federation Info** tab, specify the **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID** of the IdP (Figure 4-6). The **BASE URL** should be a URL resolvable by your mobile clients. The **ENTITY ID** should be a meaningful name that is unique among federation partners; in this case, the FQDN of the server is used.

1523 Figure 4-6 SAML IdP Federation Info

Ping PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- Server Configuration**

Copyright © 2003-2017
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.3.2.0

Server Settings

System Administration	System Info	Runtime Notifications	Runtime Reporting	Account Management	
Roles & Protocols	Federation Info	System Options	Metadata Signing	Metadata Lifetime	Summary

You must create a unique identifier for your server for use with your federation partners. A unique identifier is required for each protocol enabled. You will need to communicate this with your partners out-of-band or through metadata exchange. The Base URL is used to construct other URLs in the system and may be used as part of your system ID.

BASE URL

SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID

Cancel Previous Next **Save**

1524

1525 4.2.1 Configuring Authentication to the IdP

1526 This example configures an authentication policy that requires the user to authenticate with username
1527 and password and then with a FIDO U2F token.

1528 4.2.1.1 Configure the Password Validator

- 1529 1. On the **Server Configuration** section tab, click **Password Credential Validators** under
1530 **Authentication**.
- 1531 2. Click **Create New Instance**.
 - 1532 a. On the **Type** tab, for the **TYPE**, choose **LDAP Username Password Credential Validator**
1533 (Figure 4-7). This example will authenticate AD usernames and passwords by using the
1534 AD data store defined in [Section 4.1](#).

1535 Figure 4-7 Create Password Credential Validator

Copyright © 2003-2017
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.3.2.0

1536

- 1537 b. On the **Instance Configuration** tab, specify the parameters for searching the LDAP direc-
- 1538 tory for user accounts (Figure 4-8). Select the data store created in [Section 4.1](#), and en-
- 1539 ter the appropriate search base and filter. This example will search for a *sAMAccount-*
- 1540 *Name* matching the username entered on the login form.

1541 **Figure 4-8 Credential Validator Configuration**

Manage Credential Validator Instances | Create Credential Validator Instance

Type | **Instance Configuration** | **Extended Contract** | **Summary**

Complete the configuration necessary for this Password Credential Validator to check username/password pairs. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Credential Validator plug-in.

This password credential validator provides a means of verifying credentials stored in a directory server via the LDAP protocol. Additional user attributes from the directory can also be returned by this PCV by adding the desired attribute names to the Extended Contract.

AUTHENTICATION ERROR OVERRIDES
 (A table of LDAP authentication error codes and customized matching expressions that will match the error code to an LDAP error message. These entries override the default individual mappings of messages to codes. Use the localization features to customize the error messages displayed to end users.)

MATCH EXPRESSION
 (The expression matched against the LDAP error message returned by the server.)

[Add a new row to 'Authentication Error Overrides'](#)

Field Name	Field Value	Description
LDAP DATASTORE	dc1.spsd.msso	Select the LDAP Datastore.
SEARCH BASE	OU=Demo Users,DC=spsd,DC=msso	The location in the directory from which the LDAP search begins.
SEARCH FILTER	sAMAccountName=\${username}	You may use \${username} as part of the query. Example (for Active Directory): sAMAccountName=\${username}.
SCOPE OF SEARCH	<input type="radio"/> One Level <input checked="" type="radio"/> Subtree	
CASE-SENSITIVE MATCHING	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Allows case-sensitive expression and LDAP error matching.

[Show Advanced Fields](#)

[Cancel](#)

1542

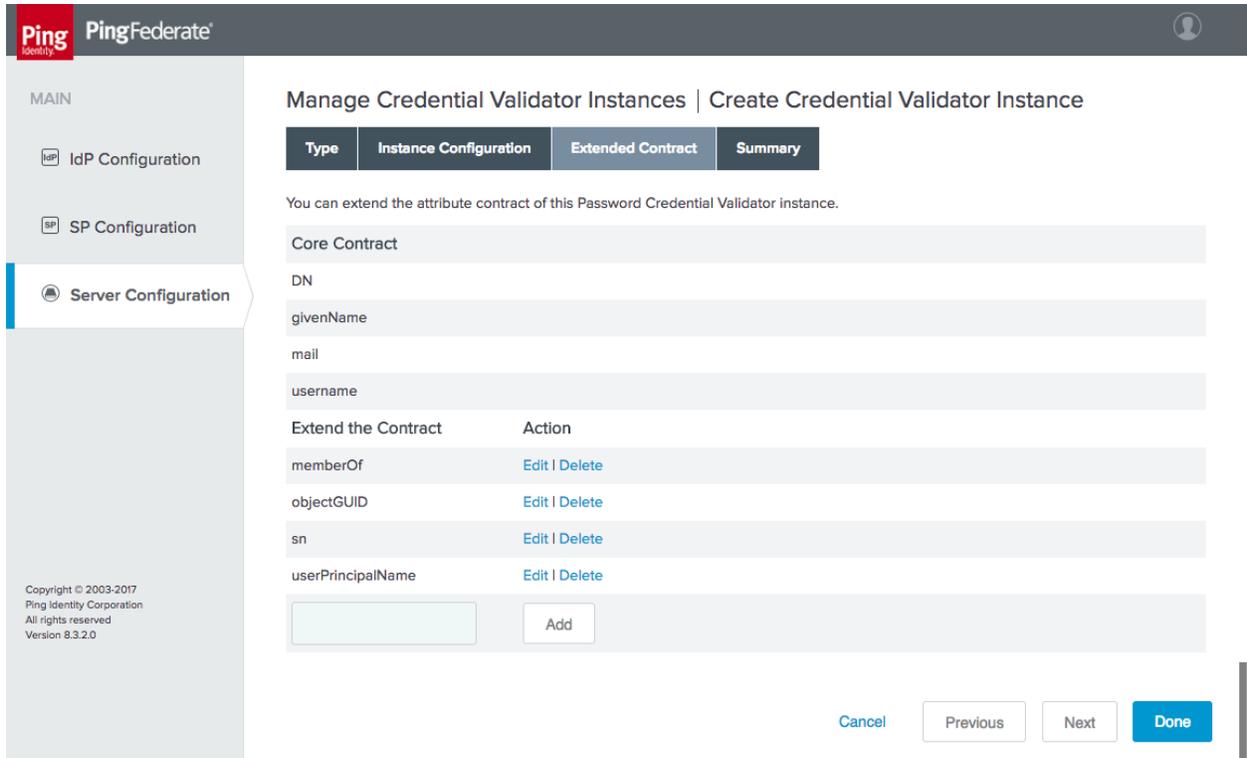
1543

1544

1545

- c. The **Extended Contract** tab enables the retrieval of additional attributes from the LDAP server, which can be used in assertions to RPs (Figure 4-9). The example shown in Figure 4-9 adds several AD attributes to the contract.

1546 Figure 4-9 Password Credential Validator Extended Contract



1547

1548

1549

- d. Finally, the **Summary** tab shows all of the values for the configured validator (Figure 4-10).

1550 **Figure 4-10 Password Validator Summary**

Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance | Manage Password Credential Validators | Create Credential Validator Instance

Type
 Instance Configuration
 Extended Contract
 Summary

Password Credential Validator configuration summary.

Create Credential Validator Instance

Type	
Instance Name	Password Validator
Instance Id	PasswordValidator
Type	LDAP Username Password Credential Validator
Class Name	org.sourceid.saml20.domain.LDAPUsernamePasswordCredentialValidator
Parent Instance Name	None

Instance Configuration

LDAP Datastore	dc1.spsd.msso
Search Base	OU=Demo Users,DC=spsd,DC=msso
Search Filter	sAMAccountName=!(username)
Scope of Search	Subtree
Case-Sensitive Matching	true
Display Name Attribute	displayName
Mail Attribute	mail
SMS Attribute	
PingID Username Attribute	

Extended Contract

Attribute	mail
Attribute	givenName
Attribute	DN
Attribute	username
Attribute	memberOf
Attribute	objectGUID
Attribute	sn
Attribute	userPrincipalName

1551

1552

- e. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the setup of the password validator.

1553 **4.2.1.2 Configure the HTML Form Adapter**

1554

1. On the **IdP Configuration** section tab, click **Adapters**.

1555

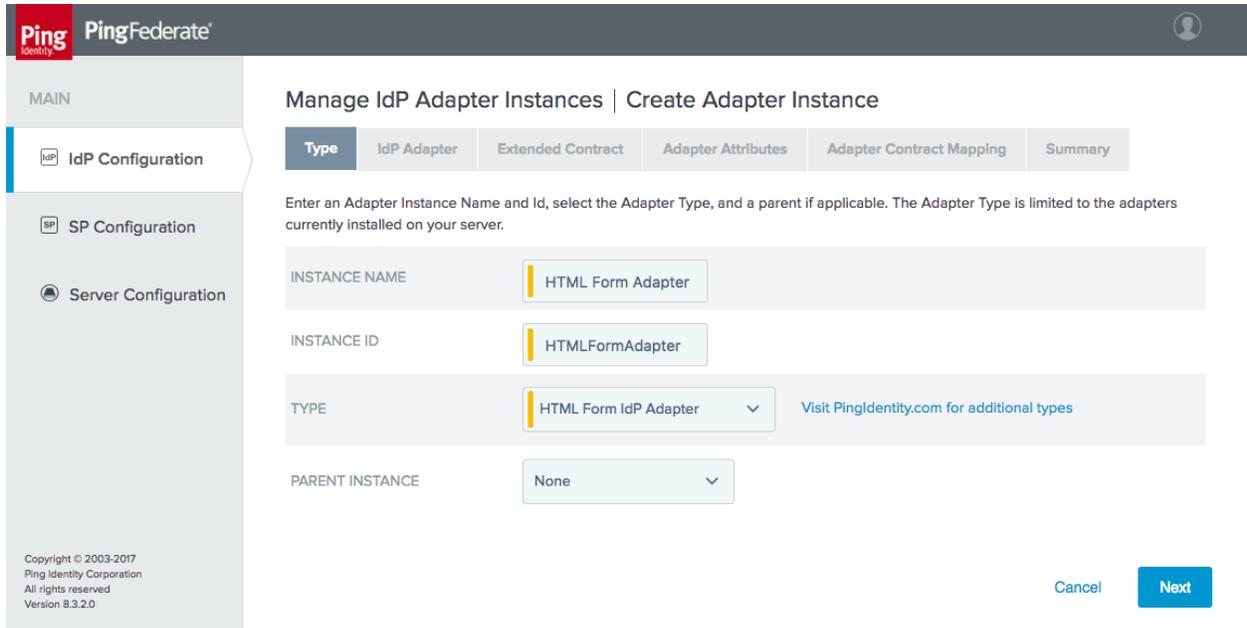
2. Click **Create New Instance**.

1556

- a. On the **Type** tab, create the name and ID of the adapter, and select the **HTML Form IdP Adapter** for the **TYPE** (Figure 4-11).

1557

1558 Figure 4-11 HTML Form Adapter Instance



1559

1560

1561

1562

1563

1564

- b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, add the **Password Validator** instance created in the previous section (Figure 4-12). This tab provides several options for customizing the login page and supporting password resets and password recovery that would be relevant to a Production deployment. In the lab, password resets were not supported, and these fields were left at their default values.

1565 Figure 4-12 Form Adapter Settings

Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance

Complete the configuration necessary to look up user security contexts in your environment. This configuration was designed into the adapter for use at your site.

CREDENTIAL VALIDATORS
(A list of Password Credential Validators to be used for authentication.)

PASSWORD CREDENTIAL VALIDATOR INSTANCE	Action
Password Validator	Edit Delete

[Add a new row to 'Credential Validators'](#)

Field Name	Field Value	Description
CHALLENGE RETRIES	3	Max value of User Challenge Retries.
SESSION STATE	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Globally <input type="radio"/> Per Adapter <input type="radio"/> None	Determines how state is maintained within one adapter or between different adapter instances.
SESSION TIMEOUT	60	Session Idle Timeout (in minutes). If left blank the timeout will be the Session Max Timeout. Ignored if 'None' is selected for Session State.
SESSION MAX TIMEOUT	480	Session Max Timeout (in minutes). Leave blank for indefinite sessions. Ignored if 'None' is selected for Session State.
ALLOW PASSWORD CHANGES	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allows users to change their password using this adapter.
PASSWORD MANAGEMENT SYSTEM		A fully-qualified URL to your password management system where users can change their password. If left blank, password changes are handled by this adapter.
ENABLE 'REMEMBER MY USERNAME'	<input type="checkbox"/>	Allows users to store their username as a cookie when authenticating with this adapter. Once stored, the username is pre-populated in the login form's username field on subsequent transactions.
CHANGE PASSWORD EMAIL NOTIFICATION	<input type="checkbox"/>	Send users an email notification upon a password change. This feature relies on the underlying PCV returning 'mail' and 'givenName' attributes containing the user's first name and e-mail address. Additionally, mail settings should be configured within Server Settings.
SHOW PASSWORD EXPIRING WARNING	<input type="checkbox"/>	Show a warning message to the user on login about an approaching password expiration.
PASSWORD RESET TYPE	<input type="radio"/> Email One-Time Link <input type="radio"/> Email One-Time Password <input type="radio"/> PingID <input type="radio"/> Text Message <input checked="" type="radio"/> None	Select the method to use for self-service password reset. Depending on the selected method, additional settings are required to complete the configuration.

[Manage Password Credential Validators](#) [Manage SMS Provider Settings](#) [Show Advanced Fields](#)

[Cancel](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1567 c. On the **Extended Contract** tab, the same attributes returned from AD by the Password
 1568 Validator are added to the adapter contract, to make them available for further use by
 1569 the IdP (Figure 4-13).

1570 **Figure 4-13 Form Adapter Extended Contract**

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. Below the navigation bar, there is a sidebar with a 'MAIN' section containing three tabs: 'IdP Configuration' (selected), 'SP Configuration', and 'Server Configuration'. The main content area is titled 'Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance'. It features a tabbed interface with five tabs: 'Type', 'IdP Adapter', 'Extended Contract' (selected), 'Adapter Attributes', 'Adapter Contract Mapping', and 'Summary'. Below the tabs, there is a descriptive paragraph: 'This adapter type supports the creation of an Extended Adapter Contract after initial deployment of the adapter instance. This Adapter Contract may be used to fulfill the Attribute Contract, look up additional attributes from a local data store, or create a persistent name identifier which uniquely identifies the user passed to your SP partners.' The 'Extended Contract' section contains a table with the following attributes and actions:

Extend the Contract	Action
username	
givenName	Edit Delete
mail	Edit Delete
memberOf	Edit Delete
objectGUID	Edit Delete
sn	Edit Delete
userPrincipalName	Edit Delete

At the bottom of the table, there is an empty text input field and an 'Add' button. Below the table, there are navigation buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Done'.

- 1571
- 1572 d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for the **username** at-
 1573 tribute.
- 1574 e. There is no need to configure anything on the **Adapter Contract Mapping** tab, as all at-
 1575 tributes are provided by the adapter. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to complete the
 1576 Form Adapter configuration.

1577 *4.2.1.3 Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter*

1578 Before this step can be completed, the FIDO U2F server, StrongAuth StrongKey CryptoEngine (SKCE),
 1579 must be installed and configured, and the StrongAuth U2F adapter for PingFederate must be installed on
 1580 the IdP. See [Section 6](#) for details on completing these tasks.

- 1581 1. On the **IdP Configuration** section tab, click **Adapters**.
- 1582 2. Click **Create New Instance**.

- 1583 a. Enter meaningful values for **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID**. For the **TYPE**, select
- 1584 “StrongAuth FIDO Adapter.” Click **Next**.

1585 **Figure 4-14 Create U2F Adapter Instance**

The screenshot shows the 'Create Adapter Instance' form in the PingFederate interface. The form is titled 'Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance' and has tabs for 'Type', 'IdP Adapter', 'Extended Contract', 'Adapter Attributes', 'Adapter Contract Mapping', and 'Summary'. The 'Type' tab is active. The form contains the following fields and values:

- INSTANCE NAME:** FIDOADPT
- INSTANCE ID:** StrongAuthFIDOAdap
- TYPE:** StrongAuth FIDO Adapter (with a dropdown arrow and a link to 'Visit PingIdentity.com for additional types')
- PARENT INSTANCE:** None (with a dropdown arrow)

At the bottom right of the form, there are 'Cancel' and 'Next' buttons. The 'Next' button is highlighted in blue. In the bottom left corner of the interface, there is a copyright notice: 'Copyright © 2003-2017 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.3.2.0'.

- 1586
- 1587 b. On the **IdP Adapter** tab, keep the default value of the **HTML FORM TEMPLATE NAME** to
- 1588 use the template that is provided with the StrongAuth U2F plugin, or specify a custom
- 1589 template if desired to change the design of the user interface (Figure 4-15). The **FIDO**
- 1590 **SERVER URL, DOMAIN ID, SKCE SERVICE USER, and SKCE SERVICE USER PASSWORD** are
- 1591 determined in the setup of the SKCE; refer to [Section 6](#) for details.

1592 Figure 4-15 U2F Adapter Settings

Ping PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- SP Configuration
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2017
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.3.2.0

Manage IdP Adapter Instances | Create Adapter Instance

Type	IdP Adapter	Extended Contract	Adapter Attributes	Adapter Contract Mapping	Summary
------	-------------	-------------------	--------------------	--------------------------	---------

Complete the configuration necessary to look up user security contexts in your environment. This configuration was designed into the adapter for use at your site.

Set the FIDO configuration from your StrongAuth CryptoEngine:

Field Name	Field Value	Description
HTML FORM TEMPLATE NAME	fido-main-template.html	HTML template (in <pf_home>/server/default/conf/template) to render for form submission.
FIDO SERVER URL	https://strongauth2.lpsd.mso:8181	The URL of the FIDO server. Must start with https and include the port number (8181 by default).
DOMAIN ID	2	The Domain ID of the SKCE.
SKCE SERVICE USER	svcfidouser	The service user that will communicate with the SKCE.
SKCE SERVICE USER PASSWORD	dontPutRealPasswordsInScreenshots	The password for the service user.

Cancel Previous Next Done

1593

1594

1595

- c. There is no need to extend the contract for the U2F adapter; therefore, skip the **Extended Contract** tab.

1596

1597

- d. On the **Adapter Attributes** tab, select the **Pseudonym** checkbox for the **username** attribute.

1598

1599

- e. There is also no need for an **Adapter Contract Mapping**; therefore, skip the **Adapter Contract Mapping** tab.

1600

- f. Click **Done**, and then click **Save**.

1601

4.2.1.4 Configure the Authentication Policies

1602

1. On the **IdP Configuration** page, click **Policies**.

1603

1604

1605

- a. Under **Manage Authentication Policies**, click the **ENABLE IDP AUTHENTICATION POLICIES** checkbox, and create a policy that starts with the **HTML Form Adapter** action (Figure 4-16).

- 1606 i. On the **Success** branch, add the FIDO U2F adapter (**FIDOADPT**) for the **Action**.
- 1607 ii. Click **Save**.

1608 **Figure 4-16 IdP Authentication Policy**

Copyright © 2003-2017
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.3.2.0

1609

1610 4.2.2 Configure the SP Connection

1611 Each RP that will receive authentication assertions from the IdP must be configured as an SP connection.
 1612 As explained in [Section 3.4.2.1](#), this activity requires coordination between the administrators of the IdP
 1613 and the RP to provide the necessary details to configure the connection. Exchanging metadata files can
 1614 help automate some of the configuration process.

1615 This section documents the configuration for the SP connection between the SAML IdP in the NCCoE Lab
 1616 and the OAuth AS in the Motorola Solutions cloud instance.

- 1617 1. To create a new SP connection, click the **IdP Configuration** section tab, and then click **Create**
 1618 **New** under **SP Connections**.
- 1619 a. On the **Connection Type** tab, select **BROWSER SSO PROFILES**, and select the **SAML 2.0**
 1620 protocol (Figure 4-17). In this case, SAML 2.0 is pre-selected because no other protocols
 1621 are enabled on this IdP.

1622 **Figure 4-17 SP Connection Type**

The screenshot shows the 'SP Connection' configuration page in PingFederate. The 'Connection Type' tab is selected, and the 'BROWSER SSO PROFILES' option is checked. The 'PROTOCOL' for this option is 'SAML 2.0'. The other options, 'WS-TRUST STS' and 'OUTBOUND PROVISIONING', are not selected. The 'Next' button is highlighted in blue.

- 1623
- 1624 b. On the **Connection Options** tab, only **BROWSER SSO** needs to be selected.
- 1625 c. If metadata for the SP is available, it can be imported on the **Import Metadata** tab. This
 1626 metadata can be specified in the form of a file upload or URL.
- 1627 d. On the **General Info** tab, enter the **PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)**
 1628 (Figure 4-18); this must match the **ENTITY ID** configured on the **Federation Info** tab in
 1629 the **Server Configuration** of the SP. The SP's **BASE URL** should also be added on this
 1630 **General Info** tab.

1631 Figure 4-18 SP Connection General Info

Ping PingFederate

MAIN

IdP Configuration

SP Configuration

Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2017
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.3.2.0

SP Connection

Connection Type | Connection Options | Metadata URL | **General Info** | Browser SSO | Credentials

Activation & Summary

This information identifies your partner's unique connection identifier (Connection ID). Connection Name represents the plain-language identifier for this connection. Optionally, you can specify multiple virtual server IDs for your own server to use when communicating with this partner. If set, these virtual server IDs will be used in place of the unique protocol identifier configured for your server in Server Settings. The Base URL may be used to simplify configuration of partner endpoints.

PARTNER'S ENTITY ID (CONNECTION ID)

CONNECTION NAME

VIRTUAL SERVER IDS

BASE URL

COMPANY

CONTACT NAME

CONTACT NUMBER

CONTACT EMAIL

APPLICATION NAME

APPLICATION ICON URL

LOGGING MODE

NONE

STANDARD

ENHANCED

FULL

1632

1633

1634

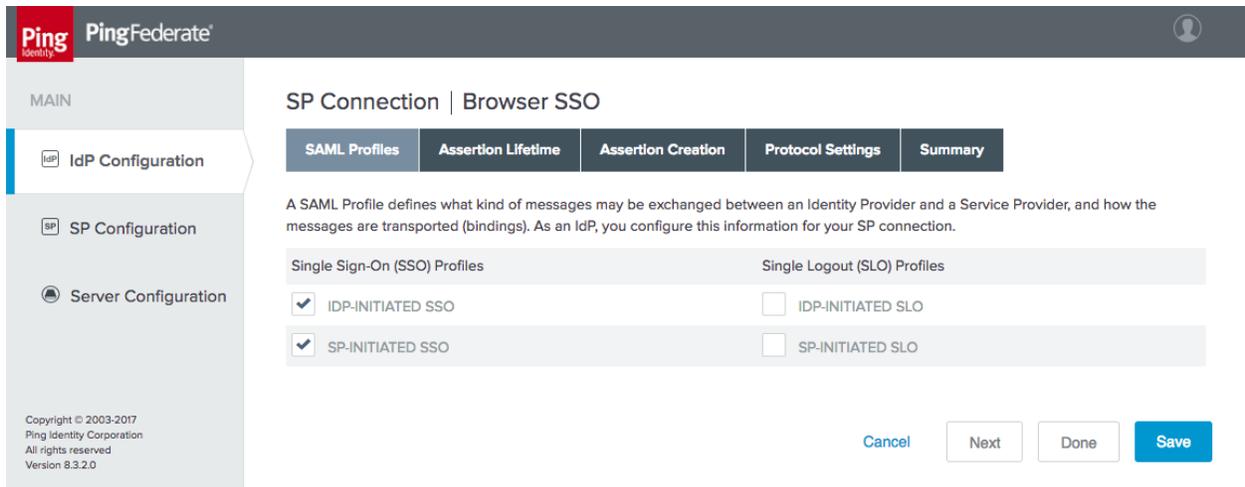
- e. On the **Browser SSO** tab, click **Configure Browser SSO**. This opens another multi-tabbed configuration screen.

1635

1636

- i. On the **SAML Profiles** tab, different SSO and Single Log-Out (SLO) profiles can be enabled (Figure 4-19). Only **SP-INITIATED SSO** is demonstrated in this lab build.

1637 Figure 4-19 SP Browser SSO Profiles



1638

1639

1640

1641

1642

1643

- ii. On the **Assertion Lifetime** tab, time intervals during which SPs should consider assertions valid can be configured in minutes before and after assertion creation. In the lab, these were both set to the default of five minutes.
- iii. On the **Assertion Creation** tab, click **Configure Assertion Creation**. This opens a new multi-tabbed configuration screen.

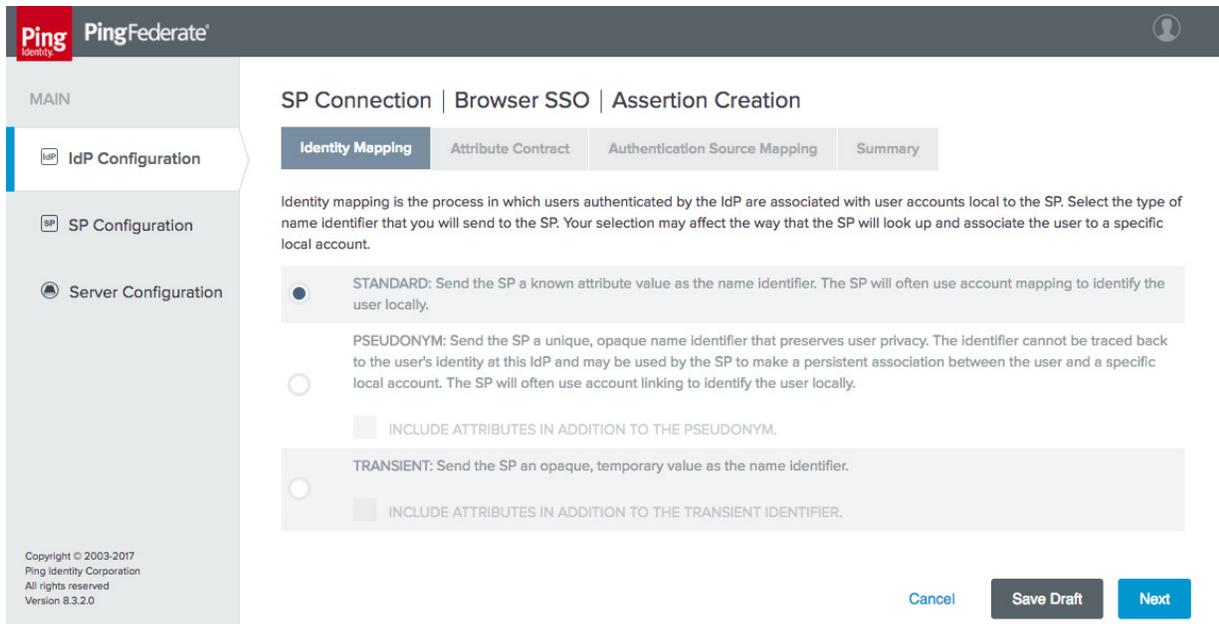
1644

1645

1646

- 1) On the **Identity Mapping** tab, select the **STANDARD** mapping (Figure 4-20). The other options are more suitable for situations where identifiers are sensitive or where there are privacy concerns over the tracking of users.

1647 Figure 4-20 Assertion Identity Mapping



1648

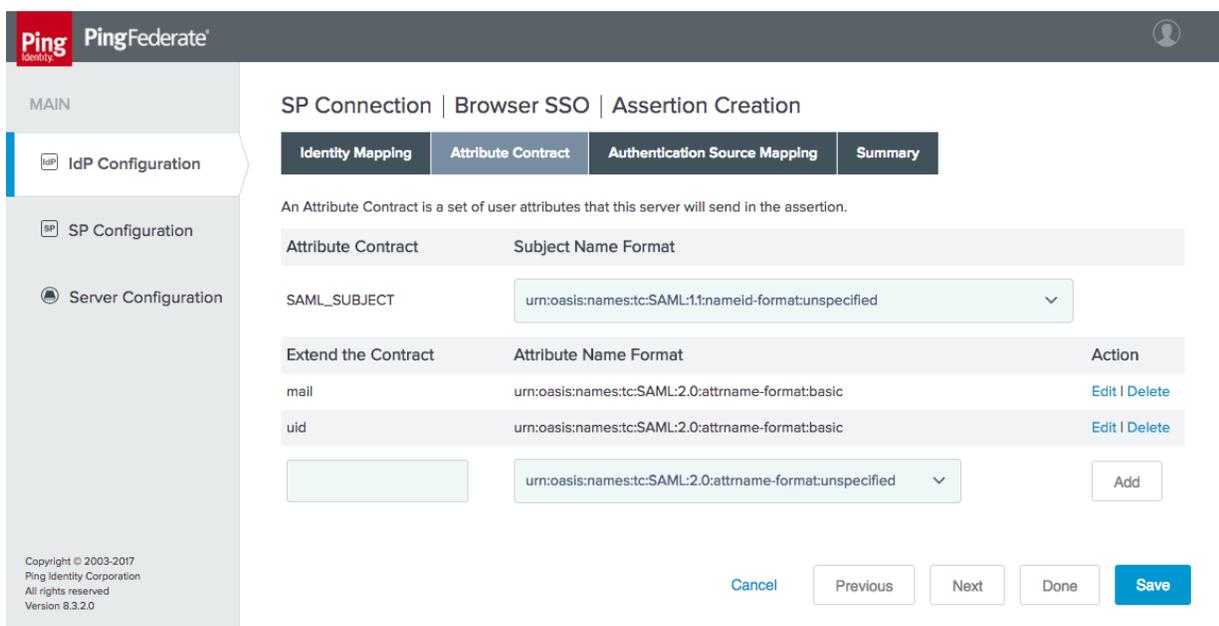
1649

1650

1651

2) On the **Attribute Contract** tab, extend the contract to include the **mail** and **uid** attributes with the basic name format (Figure 4-21). Other attributes can be added here as needed.

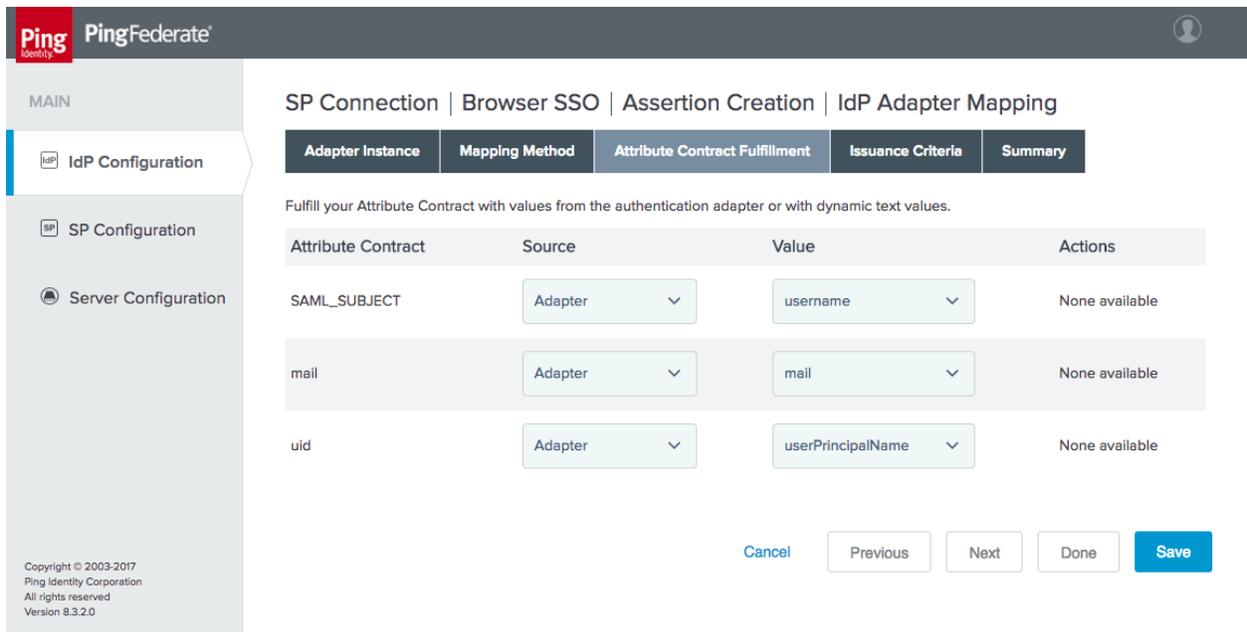
1652 Figure 4-21 Assertion Attribute Contract



1653

- 1654 3) On the **Authentication Source Mapping** tab, attributes provided by au-
 1655 thentication adapters and policy contracts can be mapped to the assertion
 1656 attribute contract, identifying which data will be used to populate the as-
 1657 sertions. The FIDO U2F adapter and the HTML Form Adapter should appear
 1658 under **Adapter Instance Name**. Select the HTML Form Adapter, as it can
 1659 provide the needed attributes from LDAP via the Password Validator and
 1660 the AD data store connection. This brings up another multi-tabbed configu-
 1661 ration screen.
- 1662 a) The **Adapter Instance** tab shows the attributes that are returned by
 1663 the selected adapter. Click **Next**.
- 1664 b) The **Mapping Method** tab provides options to query additional data
 1665 stores to build the assertions, but in this case, all of the required at-
 1666 tributes are provided by the HTML Form Adapter. Select **USE ONLY**
 1667 **THE ADAPTER CONTRACT VALUES IN THE SAML ASSERTION**.
- 1668 c) On the **Attribute Contract Fulfillment** tab, map the **SAML_SUBJECT**,
 1669 **mail**, and **uid** attributes to the **username**, **mail**, and **userPrincipal-**
 1670 **Name** adapter values (Figure 4-22).

1671 **Figure 4-22 Assertion Attribute Contract Fulfillment**



1672

- 1673 d) No **Issuance Criteria** are required; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria**
 1674 tab.
- 1675 e) Click **Done** to exit the IdP Adapter Mapping.
- 1676 4) Click **Done** to exit the Assertion Creation.
- 1677 iv. On the **Protocol Settings** tab, options such as additional SAML bindings, signa-
 1678 ture policy details, and assertion encryption policies can be specified
 1679 (Figure 4-23). For the lab build, these values were left at their default settings.

1680 **Figure 4-23 Browser SSO Protocol Settings**

The screenshot displays the PingFederate administration console for 'SP Connection | Browser SSO'. The 'Protocol Settings' tab is active, showing the following configuration details:

Protocol Settings	
OUTBOUND SSO BINDINGS	POST
INBOUND BINDINGS	POST, Redirect
SIGNATURE POLICY	SAML-standard, Authn requests over POST & Redirect
ENCRYPTION POLICY	No Encryption

Below the table is a 'Configure Protocol Settings' button. At the bottom right of the interface, there are five buttons: 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', 'Done', and 'Save'.

- 1681
- 1682 v. Click **Done** to exit Browser SSO.
- 1683 f. On the **Credentials** tab, the certificate to use for signing assertions can be specified. A
 1684 self-signed certificate can be generated by PingFederate, or a trusted certificate can be
 1685 obtained and uploaded. Click **Configure Credentials** to create or manage signing creden-
 1686 tials.
- 1687 g. On the **Activation & Summary** tab, the connection status can be set to **ACTIVE**. All con-
 1688 figured settings for the SP connection are also displayed for verification.
- 1689 h. Click **Save** to complete the SP connection configuration.
- 1690 This completes the configuration of the SAML IdP.

1691 4.3 How to Install and Configure the OIDC Identity Provider

- 1692 1. On the **Server Configuration** section tab, click **Server Settings**.
- 1693 a. On the **Roles & Protocols** tab, enable the roles and protocols as shown in Figure 4-24.
- 1694 Although the OIDC IdP does not actually use the SAML protocol, some required configuration settings are unavailable if the IdP role is not enabled.
- 1695

1696 Figure 4-24 OIDC IdP Roles

The screenshot shows the PingFederate administration console. The left sidebar has a 'Server Configuration' section with 'IdP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration' (selected). The main content area is titled 'Server Settings' and has several tabs: 'System Administration', 'System Info', 'Runtime Notifications', 'Runtime Reporting', 'Account Management', 'Roles & Protocols' (selected), 'Federation Info', 'System Options', 'Metadata Signing', 'Metadata Lifetime', and 'Summary'. Below the tabs, there is a heading 'Select the role(s) and protocol(s) that you intend to use with your federation partners.' followed by a list of checkboxes:

- ENABLE OAUTH 2.0 AUTHORIZATION SERVER (AS) ROLE
- OPENID CONNECT
- ENABLE IDENTITY PROVIDER (IDP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
 - SAML 2.0
 - AUTO-CONNECT PROFILE
 - SAML 1.1
 - SAML 1.0
 - WS-FEDERATION
 - OUTBOUND PROVISIONING
 - WS-TRUST
- ENABLE SERVICE PROVIDER (SP) ROLE AND SUPPORT THE FOLLOWING:
- ENABLE IDP DISCOVERY ROLE (SAML 2.0 ONLY)

At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', and 'Save'.

- 1697
- 1698 b. On the **Federation Info** tab, specify the **BASE URL** and **SAML 2.0 ENTITY ID**. The **BASE**
- 1699 **URL** must be a URL that is exposed to clients.
- 1700 2. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Authorization Server Settings** to configure general
- 1701 OAuth and OIDC parameters. The OIDC IdP's settings on this page are identical to those for the
- 1702 OAuth AS; refer to [Section 3.3](#) for notes on these settings.

- 1703 3. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Scope Management**.
- 1704 a. Add the scopes defined in the OpenID Connect Core specification [\[15\]](#):
- 1705 ▪ openid
- 1706 ▪ profile
- 1707 ▪ email
- 1708 ▪ address
- 1709 ▪ phone

1710 **4.3.1 Configuring Authentication to the OIDC IdP**

1711 In the lab architecture, the OIDC IdP supports FIDO UAF authentication through integration with the
1712 NNAS and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway, using the Nok Nok FIDO UAF adapter for PingFederate.
1713 Configuring UAF authentication to the OIDC IdP cannot be completed until the Nok Nok Labs servers are
1714 available and the UAF plugin has been installed on the IdP server as specified in [Section 5](#).

1715 *4.3.1.1 Configure the FIDO UAF Plugin*

1716 The steps to configure the FIDO UAF plugin for the OIDC IdP are identical to those documented in
1717 [Section 3.4.1.1](#) for direct authentication using UAF at the AS. The only difference in the lab build was the
1718 URLs for the NNAS and the Nok Nok Labs Gateway, as the AS and the OIDC IdP used two different
1719 instances of the Nok Nok Labs server.

1720 *4.3.1.2 Configure an Access Token Management Instance*

- 1721 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Management**.
- 1722 2. Click **Create New Instance**.
- 1723 a. On the **Type** tab, provide an **INSTANCE NAME** and **INSTANCE ID** (Figure 4-25).
- 1724 i. Select **Internally Managed Reference Tokens** for the **TYPE**.

1725 Figure 4-25 Create Access Token Manager

1726

1727

1728

1729

1730

1731

1732

1733

1734

1735

1736

1737

Although we have selected reference tokens, the ID Token is always issued in the form of a JWT. The token that is being configured here is not the ID Token, but rather the access token that will be issued to authorize the RP to call the userinfo endpoint at the IdP to request additional claims about the user. Because this access token only needs to be validated by the OIDC IdP itself, reference tokens are sufficient. In the Authorization Code flow, the RP obtains both the ID Token and the access token in exchange for the authorization code at the IdP's token endpoint.

- b. Click the **Instance Configuration** tab to configure some security properties of the access token, such as its length and lifetime (Figure 4-26). For the lab build, the default values were accepted.

1738 Figure 4-26 Access Token Manager Configuration

Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance

Complete the configuration necessary to issue and validate access tokens. This configuration was designed into, and is specific to, the selected Access Token Management plugin.

Field Name	Field Value	Description
TOKEN LENGTH	28	Defines how many alphanumeric characters make up an access token.
TOKEN LIFETIME	120	Defines how long, in minutes, an access token is valid.
LIFETIME EXTENSION POLICY	No Extension	Dictates which tokens are eligible for lifetime extension. Similar to a session inactivity timeout, the lifetime period of an access token can be reset each time the token is validated at the AS (subject to the values defined for the Lifetime Extension Threshold Percentage and the Maximum Token Lifetime).
MAXIMUM TOKEN LIFETIME		(Optional) Defines an absolute maximum token lifetime, in minutes, for use with the Lifetime Extension Policy. An access token's lifetime cannot be extended beyond this setting.
LIFETIME EXTENSION THRESHOLD PERCENTAGE	30	Defines the percentage of a token's lifetime remaining before the lifetime is actually extended, which can improve cluster performance.

[Show Advanced Fields](#)

Cancel Previous Next Done Save

1739

1740

1741

1742

- c. On the **Access Token Attribute Contract** tab, extend the contract with any attributes that will be included in the ID Token (Figure 4-27). In the example shown in Figure 4-27, several attributes that will be queried from AD have been added.

1743 Figure 4-27 Access Token Attribute Contract

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.2.0

Access Token Management | Create Access Token Management Instance

Type	Instance Configuration	Access Token Attribute Contract	Resource URIs	Access Control	Summary
------	------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------	----------------	---------

Provide the names of the attributes that will be carried in (or referenced by) the OAuth access token.

Extend the Contract	Action
department	Edit Delete
email	Edit Delete
family_name	Edit Delete
given_name	Edit Delete
l	Edit Delete
name	Edit Delete
phone_number	Edit Delete
postal_code	Edit Delete
preferred_username	Edit Delete
state	Edit Delete
street_address	Edit Delete
sub	Edit Delete
title	Edit Delete
updated_at	Edit Delete

1744

1745 d. There is no need to configure the **Resource URIs** or **Access Control** tabs; these tabs can
1746 be skipped.

1747 e. Click **Done**, and then click **Save**.

1748 4.3.1.3 Configure an IdP Adapter Mapping

1749 The IdP Adapter Mapping determines how the persistent grant attributes are populated using
1750 information from authentication adapters.

1751 1. Click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, and then click **IdP Adapter Mapping**.

1752 2. Select the UAF adapter instance created in [Section 4.3.1.1](#), and then click **Add Mapping**.

- 1753 a. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, map both **USER_KEY** and **USER_NAME** to the
 1754 **username** value returned from the adapter (Figure 4-28).

1755 **Figure 4-28 Access Token Contract Fulfillment**

The screenshot shows the 'IdP Adapter Mappings' configuration page in PingFederate. The 'Contract Fulfillment' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a table for mapping contract attributes to source values. The table has four columns: Contract, Source, Value, and Actions. Two rows are visible: one for 'USER_KEY' and one for 'USER_NAME'. Both rows have 'Adapter' selected in the Source column and 'username' selected in the Value column. The Actions column for both rows shows 'None available'. At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', 'Done', and 'Save'. On the left side, there is a sidebar with navigation options: 'MAIN', 'IdP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. At the bottom left of the sidebar, there is copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'.

1756

1757 *4.3.1.4 Configure an Access Token Mapping*

1758 The Access Token Mapping determines how the access token attribute contract is populated. In this
 1759 example, the values returned from the adapter are supplemented with attributes retrieved from AD,
 1760 and issuance criteria are used to require the user to be actually found in AD for a token to be issued.
 1761 Depending on the credential and access life-cycle processes used in a given organization, there may be a
 1762 lag in deactivating the authenticator or the AD account when a user's access is terminated.
 1763 Organizations' authentication policies should account for these conditions and should allow or deny
 1764 access appropriately.

- 1765 1. On the **OAuth Settings** section tab, click **Access Token Mapping**.
- 1766 2. Under **CONTEXT** and **ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER**, select the IdP Adapter and Access Token
 1767 Manager created in the preceding steps, and click **Add Mapping**.
- 1768 a. On the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab, click **Add Attribute Source**. This brings up
 1769 another multi-tabbed configuration.
- 1770 i. On the **Data Store** tab, give the attribute source an ID and description
 1771 (Figure 4-29). For **ACTIVE DATA STORE**, select the user store created in
 1772 [Section 4.1](#).

1773 Figure 4-29 Data Store for User Lookup

The screenshot shows the PingFederate configuration interface. The top navigation bar includes the Ping Identity logo and the text 'PingFederate'. Below the navigation bar, there are three tabs: 'Data Store' (selected), 'LDAP Directory Search', and 'LDAP Filter'. The 'Data Store' tab contains the following fields:

- ATTRIBUTE SOURCE ID:** adldap
- ATTRIBUTE SOURCE DESCRIPTION:** LPSD AD Forest
- ACTIVE DATA STORE:** dcl.lpsd.msso
- DATA STORE TYPE:** LDAP

Below these fields is a 'Manage Data Stores' button. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel' and 'Next' buttons. The left sidebar shows a navigation menu with 'MAIN', 'IdP Configuration', 'OAuth Settings', and 'Server Configuration'. The footer of the sidebar contains copyright information: 'Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0'.

1774

1775

1776

1777

1778

1779

1780

1781

- ii. On the **LDAP Directory Search** tab, specify the **BASE DN** and **SEARCH SCOPE**, and add the AD attributes to be retrieved (Figure 4-30). When specifying attributes, it is necessary to first select the root object class that contains the attribute. Common attributes associated with user accounts may be derived from the **User** or **OrganizationalPerson** class, for example. Refer to Microsoft's AD Schema documentation [\[16\]](#) to identify the class from which a given attribute is derived.

1782 Figure 4-30 Attribute Directory Search

Ping Federate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0

Access Token Attribute Mapping | Access Token Mapping | Attribute Sources & User Lookup

Data Store | **LDAP Directory Search** | LDAP Filter | Summary

Please configure your directory search. This information, along with the attributes supplied in the contract, will be used to fulfill the contract.

BASE DN:

SEARCH SCOPE:

Attributes to return from search

ROOT OBJECT CLASS	ATTRIBUTE	Action
	Subject DN	
	department	Remove
	displayName	Remove
	givenName	Remove
	l	Remove
	mail	Remove
	objectClass	Remove
	postalCode	Remove
	sn	Remove
	st	Remove
	streetAddress	Remove
	telephoneNumber	Remove
	title	Remove
	whenChanged	Remove

[Add Attribute](#)

[View Attribute Contract](#)

[Cancel](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#) [Done](#) [Save](#)

1783

1784

1785

1786

1787

1788

- iii. On the **LDAP Filter** tab, create the filter to select the relevant user account. In this example, the username from the adapter is matched against the AD SAM account name:

```
sAMAccountName=${adapter.username}
```

- iv. Click **Done** to exit the attribute source configuration.

- 1789 b. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, specify the source and value to use for each attribute in
- 1790 the access token attribute contract (Figure 4-31).

1791 **Figure 4-31 Access Token Contract Fulfillment**

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0

Contract	Source	Value	Actions
department	LDAP (LPSD AD)	department	None available
email	LDAP (LPSD AD)	mail	None available
family_name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	sn	None available
given_name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	givenName	None available
I	LDAP (LPSD AD)	I	None available
name	LDAP (LPSD AD)	displayName	None available
phone_number	LDAP (LPSD AD)	telephoneNumber	None available
postal_code	LDAP (LPSD AD)	postalCode	None available
preferred_username	Adapter	username	None available
state	LDAP (LPSD AD)	st	None available
street_address	LDAP (LPSD AD)	streetAddress	None available
sub	Adapter	username	None available
title	LDAP (LPSD AD)	title	None available
updated_at	LDAP (LPSD AD)	whenChanged	None available

Cancel Previous Next Done Save

1792

- 1793 c. On the **Issuance Criteria** tab, define a rule that will prevent token issuance if the user
 1794 account doesn't exist in AD (Figure 4-32). In this case, the **objectClass** attribute, which
 1795 all AD objects have, is checked for the **Value** called **user**. If no user account is found in
 1796 AD, this attribute will have no **Value**, the **Condition** will be false, and the specified **Error**
 1797 **Result** will appear in the PingFederate server log.

1798 **Figure 4-32 Access Token Issuance Criteria**

The screenshot shows the PingFederate web interface for configuring Access Token Issuance Criteria. The left sidebar contains navigation options: MAIN, IdP Configuration, OAuth Settings (selected), and Server Configuration. The main content area is titled 'Access Token Attribute Mapping | Access Token Mapping' and has four tabs: Attribute Sources & User Lookup, Contract Fulfillment, Issuance Criteria (selected), and Summary. Below the tabs, a text box explains that PingFederate can evaluate various criteria to determine whether to issue an access token. A table lists the current configuration:

Source	Attribute Name	Condition	Value	Error Result	Action
LDAP (lpsdAd)	objectClass	multi-value contains (case insensitive)	user	User object does not exist in AD	Edit Delete

Below the table, there are input fields for Source, Attribute Name, Condition, Value, and Error Result, each with a dropdown menu showing '- SELECT -'. An 'Add' button is located to the right of these fields. At the bottom of the page, there are buttons for 'Cancel', 'Previous', 'Next', 'Done', and 'Save'.

- 1799
- 1800 d. Click **Done**, and then click **Save** to finish the Access Token Attribute Mapping configura-
 1801 tion.

1802 4.3.1.5 Configure an OIDC Policy

- 1803 1. On the **OAuth Settings** tab, click **OpenID Connect Policy Management**.
- 1804 2. Click **Add Policy**.
- 1805 a. On the **Manage Policy** tab, create a **POLICY ID** and **NAME**, and select the **INCLUDE USER**
 1806 **INFO IN ID TOKEN** checkbox (Figure 4-33). This selection means that the user's attrib-
 1807 utes will be included as claims in the ID Token JWT. The advantage of this approach is
 1808 that the RP can directly obtain user attributes from the ID Token without making addi-
 1809 tional requests to the IdP. The alternative is to include only a subject claim in the ID To-
 1810 ken, and to have the RP call the IdP's userinfo endpoint to obtain additional user attrib-
 1811 utes.

1812 Figure 4-33 OIDC Policy Creation

Copyright © 2003-2016
Ping Identity Corporation
All rights reserved
Version 8.2.2.0

1813

1814

1815

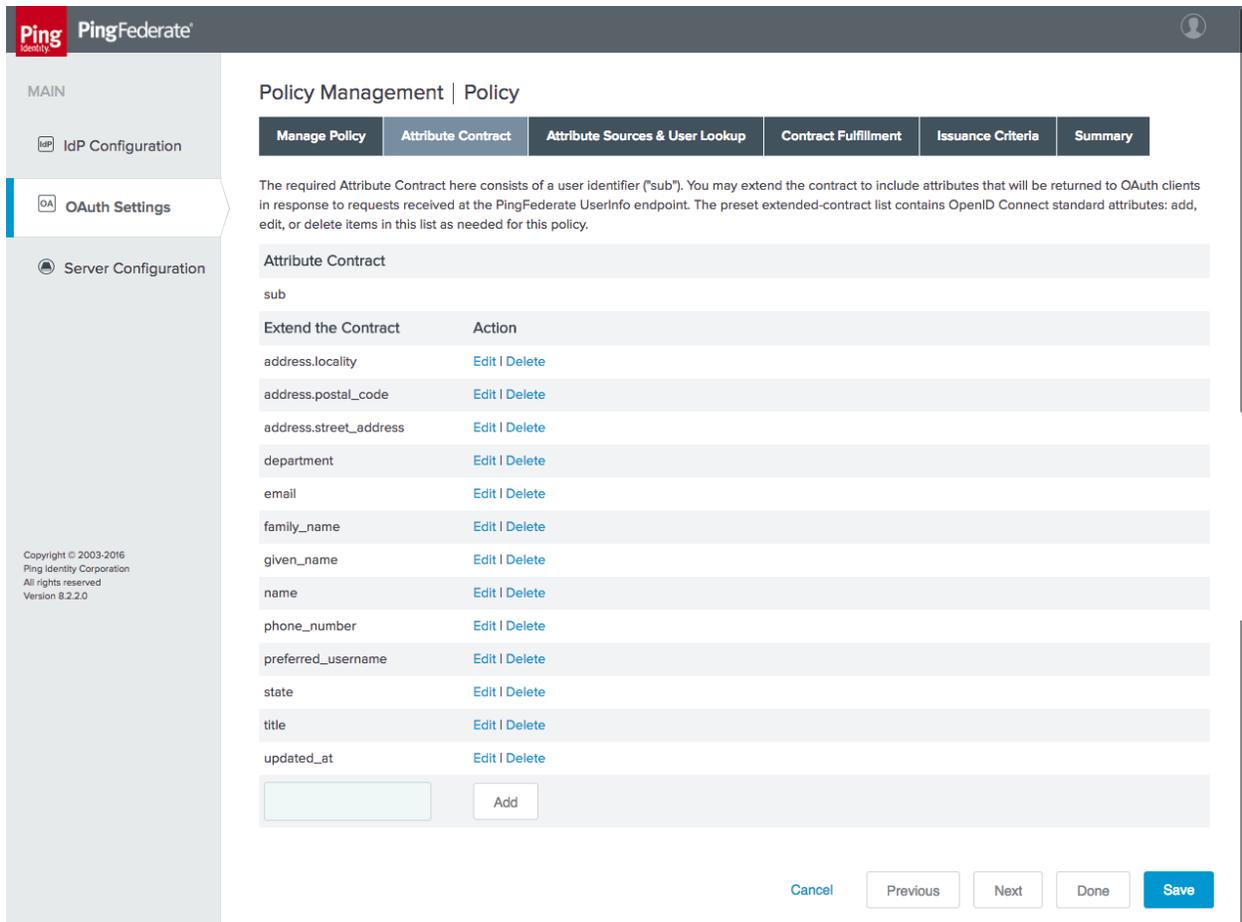
1816

1817

1818

- b. On the **Attribute Contract** tab, the set of attributes in the contract can be edited (Figure 4-34). The contract is automatically populated with the standard claims defined in the OIDC Core specification. In the example shown in Figure 4-34, some claims have been removed and others have been added to accommodate the attribute available from AD.

1819 **Figure 4-34** OIDC Policy Attribute Contract



- 1820
 - 1821
 - 1822
 - 1823
 - 1824
- c. Skip the **Attribute Sources & User Lookup** tab; there is no need to retrieve additional attributes.
 - d. On the **Contract Fulfillment** tab, populate the OIDC attributes with the corresponding values from the Access Token context (Figure 4-35).

1825 Figure 4-35 OIDC Policy Contract Fulfillment

PingFederate

MAIN

- IdP Configuration
- OAuth Settings**
- Server Configuration

Copyright © 2003-2016 Ping Identity Corporation. All rights reserved. Version 8.2.2.0

Policy Management | Policy

- Manage Policy
- Attribute Contract
- Attribute Sources & User Lookup
- Contract Fulfillment**
- Issuance Criteria
- Summary

Fulfill the Attribute Contract with values from the Access Token or from other sources listed.

Attribute Contract	Source	Value	Actions
address.locality	Access Token	l	None available
address.postal_code	Access Token	postal_code	None available
address.street_address	Access Token	street_address	None available
department	Access Token	department	None available
email	Access Token	email	None available
family_name	Access Token	family_name	None available
given_name	Access Token	given_name	None available
name	Access Token	name	None available
phone_number	Access Token	phone_number	None available
preferred_username	Access Token	preferred_username	None available
state	Access Token	state	None available
sub	Access Token	sub	None available
title	Access Token	title	None available
updated_at	Access Token	updated_at	None available

Cancel Previous Next Done **Save**

1826

1827

1828

1829

- e. There is no need for additional issuance criteria; therefore, skip the **Issuance Criteria** tab.
- f. Click **Save** to complete the OIDC Policy configuration.

1830 **4.3.2 Configuring the OIDC Client Connection**

1831 Registering a client at an OIDC IdP is analogous to creating an SP connection at a SAML IdP. Some
1832 coordination is required between the administrators of the two systems. The client ID and client secret
1833 must be provided to the RP, and the RP must provide the redirect URI to the IdP.

- 1834 1. To add a client, click the **OAuth Settings** section tab, and then click **Create New** under **Clients**.
- 1835 a. Create a **CLIENT ID** and **CLIENT SECRET** (Figure 4-36). If mutual TLS authentication is be-
1836 ing used instead, the RP must provide its certificate, which can be uploaded to the client
1837 creation page. Only the **Authorization Code** grant type is needed for this integration. In
1838 the example shown in Figure 4-36, user prompts to authorize the sharing of the user’s
1839 attributes with the RP have been disabled in favor of streamlining access to apps.

1840 Figure 4-36 OIDC Client Configuration

Client
Manage the configuration and policy information about a client.

CLIENT ID: MotorolaAS

CLIENT AUTHENTICATION: NONE CLIENT SECRET

SECRET: [masked] [Generate Secret](#)

CHANGE SECRET

CLIENT TLS CERTIFICATE

ISSUER: [SELECT -]

SUBJECT DN: [text input]

You can also extract the Subject DN from a certificate file.

No file selected [Choose file](#)

[Extract](#)

NAME: Motorola's AS

DESCRIPTION: [text input]

REDIRECT URIS: **Redirection URIs**

Redirection URIs	Action
https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/eyJpc3MlQodHRwc2pctwv63Axlmxwv2QuibXNzbo5MDMln0/cb.openid	Edit Delete
https://mfas-nccoe.noknoktest.com:8443/nl/gateway/nl/loob/reg	Edit Delete
[text input]	Add

LOGO URL: https://op1.lpsd.mso:9031/assets/image:

BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL: Bypass Restrict

RESTRICT SCORES: Restrict

ALLOWED GRANT TYPES: Authorization Code Resource Owner Password Credentials Refresh Token Implicit Client Credentials Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server) Extension Grants

DEFAULT ACCESS TOKEN MANAGER: PIDO UAF

PERSISTENT GRANTS EXPIRATION: Use Global Setting Grants Do Not Expire [text input] Days

REFRESH TOKEN ROLLING POLICY: Use Global Setting Don't Roll Roll

OPENID CONNECT: ID Token Signing Algorithm: Default Policy: Default

Grant Access to Session Revocation API

[Cancel](#) [Save](#)

1841

1842

This completes configuration of the OIDC IdP.

1843 5 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF 1844 Authentication Server

1845 For the lab build environment, the Nok Nok Labs S3 Authentication Suite provides FIDO UAF integration.
1846 The S3 Authentication Suite can support a variety of different deployments and architectures, as
1847 described in the Solution Guide [\[17\]](#). This section briefly describes the overall deployment architecture
1848 used for this build.

1849 The Nok Nok Labs SDKs can be directly integrated into mobile apps, providing UAF client functionality
1850 directly within the app. This deployment would be more suitable to use cases that do not involve
1851 federation, where the requirement is to authenticate users directly at the app back-end. Nok Nok Labs
1852 also provides “Out-of-Band” (OOB) integration. OOB can support workflows where a mobile device is
1853 used for true OOB authentication of logins or transactions initiated on another device, such as a laptop
1854 or workstation. OOB also can be used for authentication flows in a mobile web browser, including OAuth
1855 authorization flows or IdP authentication, as implemented in this build by using the AppAuth pattern.

1856 When OOB is used in a cross-device scenario, the user must first register the mobile device by scanning
1857 a QR code displayed in the browser. Subsequent authentication requests can be sent by push
1858 notification to the registered device. When the OOB flow is initiated in a mobile browser, however, the
1859 authentication request can be sent directly to the app running the Nok Nok Labs SDK by using mobile
1860 platform technologies to open links directly in mobile apps (*App Links* for Android, or *Universal Links* for
1861 iOS). The FIDO client that processes the OOB authentication request can be either a custom app
1862 incorporating the Nok Nok Labs SDK, or the Nok Nok Labs Passport app, which provides a ready-made
1863 implementation.

1864 The components of the Nok Nok Labs deployment for this build architecture are as follows:

- 1865 ▪ Nok Nok Labs Passport – provides UAF client functionality as well as Authenticator-Specific
1866 Modules (ASMs) and authenticators on the mobile device
- 1867 ▪ Nok Nok Labs PingFederate UAF Adapter – a PingFederate plugin providing integration between
1868 a PingFederate AS or IdP and the NNAS, enabling UAF authentication or transaction verification
1869 to be integrated into PingFederate authentication policies
- 1870 ▪ NNAS – provides core UAF server functionality, including the generation and verification of
1871 challenges, as well as APIs for interactions with UAF clients and the PingFederate Adapter
- 1872 ▪ Nok Nok Labs Gateway – provides a simplified interface to request FIDO operations from the
1873 Authentication Server, as well as integration with the existing app session management
1874 infrastructure
- 1875 ▪ Nok Nok Labs Gateway Tutorial App – a demonstration web app implementation that provides
1876 simple U2F and UAF authentication and registration workflows

1877 In a typical production implementation, the gateway functions for authenticator management
1878 (registration and de-registration) would typically require strong authentication, implemented through
1879 the Gateway’s session management integration. Nok Nok Labs’ documentation for the PingFederate
1880 plugin provides examples for defining a “reg” OAuth scope to request authenticator registration. An
1881 OAuth Scope Authentication Selector could be used in a PingFederate authentication policy to trigger
1882 the required strong authentication process.

1883 5.1 Platform and System Requirements

1884 The following subsections list the hardware, software, and network requirements for the various Nok
1885 Nok Labs components.

1886 5.1.1 Hardware Requirements

1887 Nok Nok Labs specifies the following minimum hardware requirements for the NNAS and Nok Nok Labs
1888 Gateway components. The requirements for acceptable performance will depend on the anticipated
1889 user population and server load. See the *Enabling Scalability & Availability* section of the *Solution Guide*
1890 for architecture guidance on deploying the NNAS in a clustered configuration.

- 1891 ▪ Processor: 1 CPU
- 1892 ▪ Memory: 4 GB RAM
- 1893 ▪ Hard disk drive size: 10 GB

1894 5.1.2 Software Requirements

1895 Complete software requirements for the NNAS are provided in the *Nok Nok Labs Authentication Server*
1896 *Administration Guide* [\[18\]](#). The major requirements are summarized below:

- 1897 ▪ OS: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 or CentOS 7
- 1898 ▪ Relational database system: MySQL 5.7.10 or later versions, Oracle Database 12c, or PostgreSQL
1899 9.2 or 9.4
- 1900 ▪ Application server: Apache Tomcat 8.0.x or 8.5.x
- 1901 ▪ Java: Oracle JDK Version 8
- 1902 ▪ Build tool: Apache Ant 1.7 or later versions
- 1903 ▪ For clustered deployments: Redis 2.8 or later versions
- 1904 ▪ Google Cloud Messenger (GCM) or Apple Push Notification System (APNS), if using push
1905 messages

1906 The Nok Nok Labs PingFederate Adapter is compatible with PingFederate 8.1.3 or later versions.

1907 The Nok Nok Labs Gateway is also deployed in Tomcat.

1908 5.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Authentication Server

1909 The installation process for the Authentication Server is documented in the *Administration Guide*. A
1910 high-level summary is provided below, with notes relevant to the lab build:

- 1911 ▪ Install the OS and dependent software, including Java and Tomcat. The database can be
1912 installed on the same host as Tomcat, or remotely. Provision a TLS certificate for the server, and
1913 configure Tomcat to use TLS.
- 1914 ▪ The configuration for push notifications to support OOB authentication is not required for this
1915 build; push notifications would be used when the mobile device is used to authenticate logins or
1916 transactions initiated on a separate device.
- 1917 ▪ Follow the instructions to generate an encryption key, and encrypt database credentials in the
1918 installation script. Encrypting the push notification credentials is not required, unless that
1919 functionality will be used.
- 1920 ▪ For this lab build, the standalone installation was used. The standalone option uses the
1921 PostgreSQL database on the same host as the Authentication Server, and also installs the
1922 Tutorial app.
- 1923 ▪ After running the installation script, delete the encryption key (`NNL_ENCRYPTION_KEY_BASE64`)
1924 from `nnl-install-conf.sh`.
- 1925 ▪ For this lab build, the default policies and authenticators were used. In a production
1926 deployment, policies could be defined to control the authenticator types that could be
1927 registered and used to authenticate.
- 1928 ▪ Provisioning a Facet ID is not necessary for the OOB integration with Nok Nok Labs Passport, as
1929 used in the lab. If the Nok Nok Labs SDK were integrated with a custom mobile app, then the
1930 Facet ID would need to be configured, and the `facets.uaf` file would need to be published at a
1931 URL where it is accessible to clients.
- 1932 ▪ App link/universal link integration (optional) – In the lab, the default setting using an app link
1933 under <https://app.noknok.com> was used. This is acceptable for testing, but in a production
1934 deployment, an app link pointing to the IdP’s actual domain name would typically be used. It
1935 should be noted that the FQDN for the app link must be different from the authentication
1936 endpoint (i.e., the IdP’s URL) at least by sub-domain.
- 1937 ▪ Configure tenant-specific and global parameters. For the lab build, a single tenant was used.
1938 Many parameters can be left at the default settings. Some notes on specific parameters are
1939 provided below:
 - 1940 • `uaf.application.id` – This should be a URL that is accessible to clients. In a production
1941 deployment, the AS may not be accessible, so this may need to be hosted on a different
1942 server.

- 1943 • `uaf.facet.id` – There is no need to modify the Facet ID setting to enable the use of the
 1944 Passport app for OOB authentication; however, if other custom apps were directly
 1945 integrating the Nok Nok Labs SDK, they would need to be added here.
- 1946 ▪ For a production deployment, client certificate authentication to the Authentication Server
 1947 should be enabled. This is done by configuring the Tomcat HTTP connector to require client
 1948 certificates. This requires provisioning a client certificate for the gateway (and any other servers
 1949 that need to call the Nok Nok Labs APIs). See the notes in Section 5.3 of the *Administration*
 1950 *Guide* about configuring the Gateway to use client certificate authentication. A general
 1951 reference on configuring TLS in Tomcat 8 can be found at [https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-](https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html)
 1952 [8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html](https://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-8.0-doc/ssl-howto.html).

1953 5.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Gateway Server

1954 The Nok Nok Labs Gateway app is delivered as a Web Archive (WAR) file that can be deployed to a
 1955 Tomcat server. For the lab build, it was deployed on the same server as the NNAS.

1956 Configure the required settings in the `nnlgateway.properties` file, including the settings listed below:

- 1957 ▪ `mfas_location` – NNAS URL
- 1958 ▪ `server.auth.enabled` – should be set to true; also requires configuring the trust-store settings
- 1959 ▪ `client.auth.enabled` – see notes in Section 5.2 above; should be enabled for strong client
 1960 authentication in production deployments; also requires configuring the keystore settings

1961 In addition, the Gateway Tutorial app was installed by deploying the `gwtutorial.war` file and
 1962 configuring the required URLs in `gwtutorial.properties`.

1963 5.4 How to Install and Configure the FIDO UAF Adapter for the OAuth 2 AS

1964 Nok Nok Labs provided a tar file containing a set of software tools for integration and testing with
 1965 PingFederate. Version 5.1.0.501 of the Ping Integration library was used for the lab build. The
 1966 installation process is summarized below; refer to the *Nok Nok PingFederate Adapter Integration Guide*
 1967 [\[19\]](#) for full details:

- 1968 1. Extract the *adapter* folder from the `nnl-ping-integration-5.1.0.501.tar` file onto the PingFederate
 1969 server where the adapter will be installed.
- 1970 2. Stop PingFederate if it is running, and run the installation script. The path to the PingFederate
 1971 installation is passed as an argument; run the script by using an account with write access to the
 1972 PingFederate installation:
- 1973

```
$ ./adapter-deploy.sh /usr/share/pingfederate-8.2.2/pingfederate
```
- 1974 3. Configure the `adapter.properties` file (located in the PingFederate directory under
 1975 `server/default/conf`) as required for the server and client TLS authentication settings specified

1976 earlier in the Authentication Server configuration. If push notifications are enabled, configure
 1977 the relevant settings.

1978 4. The *Configure Session Manager* and *Deploy Nok Nok Gateway OOB* sections of the *Integration*
 1979 *Guide* provide settings to use PingFederate to protect the Registration endpoint on the Nok Nok
 1980 Labs Gateway. This could be used in conjunction with the custom “reg” scope and a PingFederate
 1981 authentication policy to require strong authentication prior to UAF authenticator registration.
 1982 This configuration was not tested in the lab.

1983 The *Configure PingFederate Console* section of the *Integration Guide* walks through the complete
 1984 configuration of a PingFederate OIDC provider. See [Section 4.3](#) of this guide for the procedure to
 1985 configure the OpenID Provider.

1986 6 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F 1987 Authentication Server

1988 The SKCE from StrongAuth performs the FIDO U2F server functionality in the build architecture.
 1989 StrongAuth’s main product is the StrongAuth Key Appliance, but the company also distributes much of
 1990 its software under the *Lesser General Public License (LGPL)*, published by the Free Software Foundation.
 1991 SKCE 2.0 Build 163 was downloaded from its repository on *Sourceforge* and was used for this build. For
 1992 more information, documentation, and download links, visit the vendor’s site at
 1993 <https://www.strongauth.com/products/foss>.

1994 6.1 Platform and System Requirements

1995 The following subsections document the software, hardware, and network requirements for SKCE 2.0.

1996 6.1.1 Software Requirements

1997 StrongAuth’s website lists the OSs on which SKCE has been tested:

- 1998 ▪ CentOS 6.X or 7.X, 64-bit
- 1999 ▪ Windows 7 Professional, 64-bit

2000 Since SKCE is a Java app, in theory it should be able to run on any OS that supports a compatible version
 2001 of Java and the other required software. The app was built with the Oracle JDK Version 8, Update 72. For
 2002 this build, SKCE was installed on a CentOS 7.4 server; therefore, these steps assume a Linux installation.

2003 SKCE can be installed manually or with an installation script included in the download. SKCE depends on
 2004 other software components, including an SQL database, an LDAP directory server, and the Glassfish Java
 2005 app server. By default, the script will install MariaDB, OpenDJ, and Glassfish all on a single server. SKCE
 2006 can also utilize AD for LDAP.

2007 For this build, the scripted installation was used with the default software components. The required
2008 software components, which are listed below, must be downloaded prior to running the installation
2009 script:

- 2010 ▪ Glassfish 4.1
- 2011 ▪ Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files 8
- 2012 ▪ JDK 8, Update 121
- 2013 ▪ OpenDJ 3.0.0
- 2014 ▪ MariaDB 10.1.22
- 2015 ▪ MariaDB Java Client

2016 See StrongAuth’s scripted installation instructions for details and download links:

2017 [https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongAuth%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%2016](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongAuth%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20scripted/)
2018 [3%29%20scripted/](https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongAuth%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20scripted/).

2019 To download OpenDJ, you must register for a free account for *ForgeRock BackStage*.

2020 SKCE can also utilize an AD LDAP service. The LDAP directory contains system user accounts for
2021 managing the SKCE (generating cryptographic keys, etc.) Data pertaining to registered users and
2022 authenticators is stored in the SQL database, not in LDAP.

2023 6.1.2 Hardware Requirements

2024 StrongAuth recommends installing SKCE on a server with at least 10 GB of available disk space and 4 GB
2025 of RAM.

2026 6.1.3 Network Requirements

2027 The SKCE API is hosted on Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) Port 8181. Any apps that request U2F
2028 registration, authentication, or deregistration actions from the SKCE need to be able to connect on this
2029 port. Glassfish runs an HTTPS service on this port. Use firewall-cmd, iptables, or any other system utility
2030 for manipulating the firewall to open this port.

2031 Other network services listen on the ports listed below. For the scripted installation, where all these
2032 services are installed on a single server, there is no need to adjust firewall rules for these services
2033 because they are only accessed from localhost.

- 2034 ▪ 3306 – MariaDB listener
- 2035 ▪ 4848 – Glassfish administrative console
- 2036 ▪ 1389 – OpenDJ LDAP service

2037 6.2 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Authentication Server

2038 StrongAuth’s scripted installation process is documented at
 2039 <https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Install%20StrongAuth%20CryptoEngine%202.0%20%28Build%20163%29%20scripted/>.
 2040

2041 The installation procedure consists of the following steps:

- 2042 ▪ Downloading the software dependencies to the server where SKCE will be installed
- 2043 ▪ Making any required changes to the installation script
- 2044 ▪ Running the script as root/administrator
- 2045 ▪ Performing post-installation configuration

2046 The installation script creates a “strongauth” Linux user and installs all software under
 2047 `/usr/local/strongauth`. Rather than reproduce the installation steps here, this section provides some
 2048 notes on the installation procedure:

- 2049 1. Download the software: Download and unzip the SKCE build to a directory on the server where
 2050 SKCE is being installed. Download all installers as directed in the SKCE instructions to the same
 2051 directory.
- 2052 2. Change software versions as required in the install script: If different versions of any of the
 2053 software dependencies were downloaded, update the file names in the install script (*install-
 2054 skce.sh*). Using different versions of the dependencies, apart from minor point-release versions,
 2055 is not recommended. For the lab build, JDK Version 8u151 was used instead of the version
 2056 referenced in the instructions. This required updating the `JDK` and `JDKVER` settings in the file.
- 2057 3. Change passwords in the install script: Changing the default passwords in the delivered script is
 2058 strongly recommended. The defaults are readily discoverable, as they are distributed with the
 2059 software. Passwords should be stored in a password vault or other agency-approved secure
 2060 storage. Once the installation script has been run successfully, the script should be deleted or
 2061 sanitized to remove passwords. The following lines in the install script contain passwords:

```

2062 LINUX_PASSWORD=ShaZam123           # For 'strongauth' account
2063 GLASSFISH_PASSWORD=adminadmin     # Glassfish Admin password
2064 MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD=BigKahuna     # MySQL 'root' password
2065 MYSQL_PASSWORD=AbracaDabra       # MySQL 'skles' password
2066 SKCE_SERVICE_PASS=Abcd1234!      # Webservice user 'service-cc-ce' password
2067 SAKA_PASS=Abcd1234!
2068 SERVICE_LDAP_BIND_PASS=Abcd1234!
```

2069 SEARCH_LDAP_BIND_PASS=Abcd1234!

2070 4. Set the App ID URL: The App ID setting in *install-skce.sh* should point to a URL that will be
2071 accessible to clients where the *app.json* file can be downloaded. The default location is a URL on
2072 the SKCE server, but the SKCE would not be exposed to mobile clients in a typical production
2073 deployment. In the lab, *app.json* was hosted on the PingFederate server hosting the IdP in the
2074 following location:

2075 */usr/share/pingfederate-8.3.2/pingfederate/server/default/conf/template/assets/scripts*

2076 which enables the file to be accessed by clients at the following URL:

2077 *https://oidp1.slpsd.msso:9031/assets/scripts/app.json.*

2078 5. Run the script: *install-skce.sh* must be run as the root user. If the install script terminates with an
2079 error, troubleshoot and correct any problems before continuing.

2080 6. (For CentOS 7) create firewall rule: The install script attempts to open the required port using
2081 iptables, which does not work on CentOS 7. In that case, the following commands will open the
2082 port:

2083 # **firewall-cmd --permanent --add-port 8181/tcp**

2084 success

2085 # **firewall-cmd --reload**

2086 success

2087 7. Install additional libraries: Depending on how CentOS was installed, some additional libraries
2088 may be required to run the graphical key custodian setup tool. In the lab, the SKCE server did
2089 not include X11 or a graphical desktop, so the key custodian setup was run over Secure Shell
2090 (SSH) with X11 forwarding. To install additional libraries needed for this setup, run the following
2091 commands:

2092 # **yum install libXrender**

2093 # **yum install libXtst**

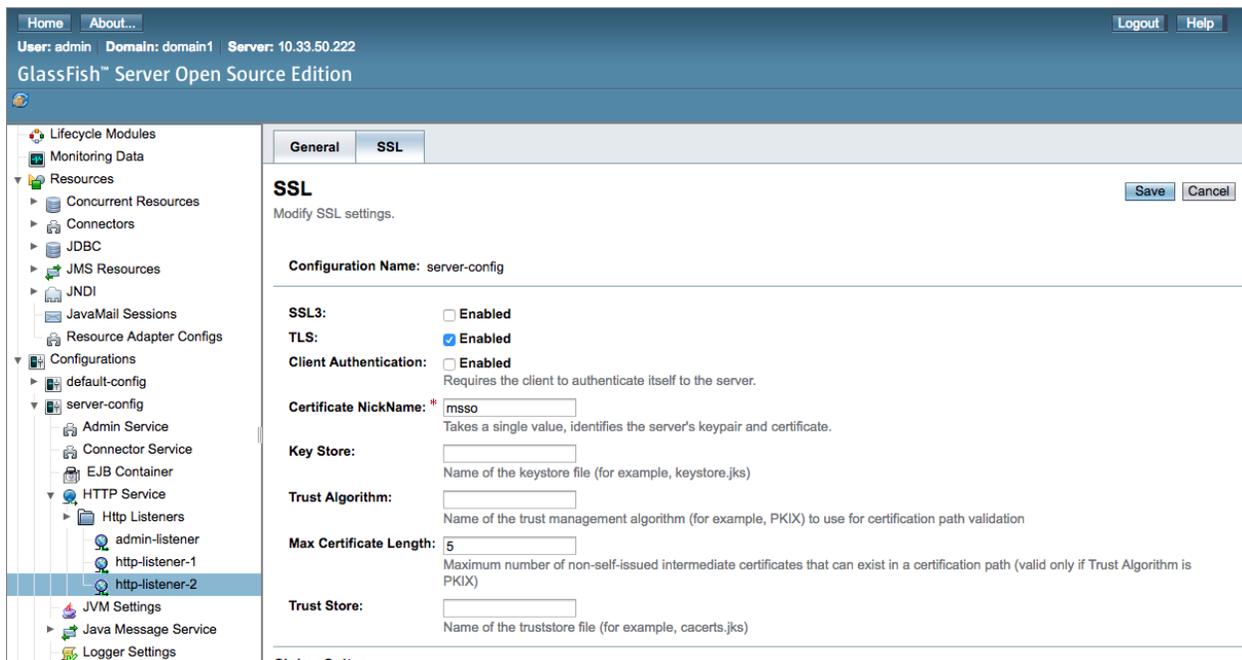
2094 Note that running the graphical configuration tool over SSH also requires configuring X11
2095 forwarding in the SSH daemon (**sshd**) on the server, and using the **-X** command line option
2096 when connecting from an SSH client.

2097 8. Run the key custodian setup tool: In production deployments, the use of a Hardware Security
2098 Module (HSM) and Universal Serial Bus (USB) drive for the security officer and key custodian
2099 credentials is strongly recommended. In the lab, the software security module was used. Also,
2100 the lab setup utilized a single SKCE server; in this case, all instructions pertaining to copying keys
2101 to a secondary appliance can be ignored.

- 2102 9. Restart Glassfish: On CentOS 7, run the following command:
- 2103 `$ sudo systemctl restart glassfishd`
- 2104 10. Complete Step 3b in the SKCE installation instructions to activate the cryptographic module.
- 2105 11. Complete Step 3c in the SKCE installation instructions to create the domain signing key. When
- 2106 prompted for the App ID, use the URL referenced above in the App ID setting of the *install-*
- 2107 *skce.sh* script.
- 2108 12. Complete Step 4 if you are installing secondary SKCE instances; this was not done for this build,
- 2109 but is recommended for a production installation.
- 2110 13. Install a TLS certificate (optional): The SKCE installation script creates a self-signed certificate for
- 2111 the SKCE. It is possible to use the self-signed certificate, though PingFederate and any other
- 2112 servers that integrate with the SKCE would need to be configured to trust it. However, many
- 2113 organizations will have their own CAs, and will want to generate a trusted certificate for the
- 2114 SKCE for production use. To generate and install the certificate, follow the steps listed below:
- 2115 a. The keystore used by the SKCE Glassfish server is listed below:
- 2116 `/usr/local/strongauth/glassfish4/glassfish/domains/domain1/config/keystore.jks`
- 2117 `e.jks`
- 2118 b. The default password for the keystore is “changeit”.
- 2119 c. Use keytool to generate a keypair and certificate signing request. For example, the following
- 2120 commands generate a 2048-bit key pair with the alias “msso,” and export a Certificate Signing Request (CSR):
- 2121
- 2122 `$ keytool -genkeypair -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -alias msso -keystore`
- 2123 `keystore.jks`
- 2124 `$ keytool -certreq -alias msso -file strongauth.req -keystore`
- 2125 `keystore.jks`
- 2126 d. Submit the CSR to your organization’s CA, and import the signed certificate along with
- 2127 the root and any intermediates:
- 2128 `$ keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias msso-root -file lab-certs/root.pem`
- 2129 `-keystore keystore.jks`
- 2130 `$ keytool -import -alias msso -file lab-certs/strongauth.lpsd.msso.cer -`
- 2131 `keystore keystore.jks`
- 2132 e. To configure the SKCE to use the new certificate, log into the Glassfish administrative
- 2133 console on the SKCE server. The console runs on Port 4848; the username is “admin,”
- 2134 and the password will be whatever was configured for `GLASSFISH_PASSWORD` in the
- 2135 *install-skce.sh* script.

- 2136 i. Navigate to *Configurations, server-config, HTTP Service, Http Listeners, http-*
 2137 *listener-2*, as shown in Figure 6-1. On the **SSL** tab, set the **Certificate NickName**
 2138 to the alias that was created with the “keytool -genkeypair” command above.

2139 **Figure 6-1 Glassfish SSL Settings**



- 2140
- 2141 f. Click **Save**, and then restart glassfish. If logged on as the glassfish user, run the following
 2142 command:
- 2143
- 2144 g. In a browser, access the SKCE web service on Port 8181, and ensure that it is using the
 2145 newly created certificate.
- 2146 h. For the FIDO Engine tests below to complete successfully, the main CA trust store for
 2147 the JDK will need to be updated with your organization’s CA certificate. This can also be
 2148 done with keytool:

2149

```
$ keytool -import -trustcacerts -file lab-certs/root.pem -keystore
```


 2150

```
$JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/security/cacerts
```

- 2151 14. Test the FIDO Engine: Follow the testing instructions under Step D at the following URL:
 2152 <https://sourceforge.net/p/skce/wiki/Test%20SKCE%202.0%20using%20a%20client%20program%20-%20Build%20163/>.
 2153

2154 There are additional tests on that web page to test the other cryptographic functions of the
2155 SKCE; however, only the FIDO Engine tests are critical for this build.

2156 If the FIDO Engine tests are completed without errors, proceed to Section 6.3 to integrate the SKCE with
2157 the IdP. If any errors are encountered, the Glassfish log file (located at
2158 */usr/local/strongauth/glassfish4/glassfish/domains/domain1/logs/server.log*) should contain messages
2159 to aid in troubleshooting.

2160 **6.3 How to Install and Configure the FIDO U2F Adapter for the IdP**

2161 To incorporate FIDO U2F authentication into a login flow at the IdP, some integration is needed to
2162 enable the IdP to call the SKCE APIs. In the lab build architecture, FIDO U2F authentication was
2163 integrated into a SAML IdP. PingFederate has a plugin architecture that enables the use of custom and
2164 third-party adapters in the authentication flow. StrongAuth provides a PingFederate plugin to enable
2165 PingFederate IdPs (or AS) to support U2F authentication. This section describes the installation of the
2166 plugin on a PingFederate server. For details on how to integrate U2F authentication to a login flow, see
2167 [Section 4.2.1.3](#).

2168 The StrongAuth plugin for PingFederate is delivered in a zip file containing documentation and all of the
2169 required program files.

- 2170 1. To begin the installation process, upload the zip file to the PingFederate server where the
2171 StrongAuth plugin will be installed, and unzip the files.
- 2172 2. If Apache Ant is not already installed on the server, install it now by using the server’s package
2173 manager. For CentOS, this can be done by running the following command:
2174

```
# yum install ant
```
- 2175 3. Once Apache Ant is installed, follow the “Installation” instructions in the *StrongAuth – Ping
2176 Federate FIDO IdP Adapter Installation Guide* [20], which consist of copying the plugin files to
2177 the required directories in the PingFederate installation, and running *build.sh*. If the script runs
2178 successfully, it will build the plugin using Ant and restart PingFederate.
- 2179 4. Follow the steps in “Table 2: Configure the SKCE” in the *Installation Guide*. For this build, the
2180 *app.json* file needs to be copied to a browser-accessible location on the PingFederate server
2181 where the plugin is being installed. In the lab, we placed it under the following location:
2182

```
/usr/share/pingfederate-8.3.2/pingfederate/server/default/conf/template/assets/scripts
```
- 2183 5. This enables the *app.json* to be accessed at the URL
2184

```
https://idp1.spsd.mssso:9031/assets/scripts/app.json
```

. Note that Steps 4 and 5 in Table 2 of the
2185 *Installation Guide* are only required if the SKCE is using the default self-signed certificate; if a
2186 trusted certificate was installed as described in [Section 6.2](#), then those steps can be skipped.

- 2187 6. Download the JQuery 2.2.0 library at the URL below, and save it to the scripts folder referenced
2188 above: <https://code.jquery.com/jquery-2.2.0.min.js>.
- 2189 7. Follow the steps in “Table 3: Configure the Ping Federate Instance” in the *Installation Guide*.
2190 Importing the SKCE self-signed certificate is not required if a trusted certificate was created.
2191 Installation of the JCE unlimited policy was described in the PingFederate installation
2192 instructions in [Section 3](#), so that too can be skipped at this point, if it has already been done.
2193 Steps 7–9 should be completed in any case.
- 2194 8. Follow the steps in “Table 4: Configuring the FIDO Adapter” in the *Installation Guide*. In Step 5,
2195 the Domain ID typically should be set to “1,” unless you have defined multiple domains in the
2196 SKCE. For the username and password, use the values configured earlier in *install-skce.sh*.
- 2197 9. “Table 5: Ping Federate OAuth Configuration Steps” in the *Installation Guide* provides an
2198 example of how to incorporate U2F into a login flow, along with username/password form login,
2199 by creating a composite adapter that includes the login form and U2F adapters, and using a
2200 selector to activate the composite adapter whenever an OAuth authorization request includes
2201 the scope value “ldap.” Alternatively, the individual adapters can be called directly in an
2202 authentication policy. See Chapter 4 of the *Installation Guide* for additional examples of using
2203 U2F in authentication policies.

2204 6.3.1 FIDO U2F Registration in Production

2205 By default, the StrongAuth Ping plugin enables the registration of U2F authenticators. In production, an
2206 authorized registration process should be established to provide adequate assurance in the binding of
2207 the authenticator to a claimed identity. If the FIDO adapter is accessible after single-factor password
2208 authentication, organizations may want to disable the registration functionality. See Section B.5 in
2209 Volume B of this guide for a discussion of FIDO enrollment.

2210 7 Functional Tests

2211 The MSSO architecture has a number of interoperating components, which can make troubleshooting
2212 difficult. This section describes tests that can be performed to validate that individual components are
2213 working as expected. If issues are encountered with the overall SSO flow, these tests may help identify
2214 the problem area.

2215 7.1 Testing FIDO Authenticators

2216 The FIDO Alliance implements a Functional Certification Program, in which products are evaluated for
2217 conformance to the UAF and U2F specifications. Purchasing FIDO-certified authenticators can help avoid
2218 potential authenticator implementation issues. Information on the certification program is available at
2219 <https://fidoalliance.org/certification/>, and the FIDO Alliance website also lists certified products.

2220 Some resources are available to help troubleshoot individual authenticators:

- 2221 ▪ The Yubico demonstration site provides an interface for testing registration and authentication
2222 with U2F authenticators: <https://demo.yubico.com/u2f>.
- 2223 ▪ The Nok Nok Labs Gateway Tutorial App supports testing of the registration, authentication, and
2224 transaction verification functions of FIDO UAF authenticators.

2225 7.2 Testing FIDO Servers

2226 The StrongAuth SKCE documentation includes instructions on testing U2F authenticator registration,
2227 authentication, de-registration, and other functions. See Step 14 in [Section 6.2](#).

2228 To test the NNAS, Nok Nok Labs provides the OnRamp mobile app in the Google Play Store and the
2229 Apple App Store to test the server APIs with UAF authenticators.

2230 7.3 Testing IdPs

2231 If federated authentication is failing, the issue may lie at the IdP or the AS. The PingFederate server log
2232 (located by default under `<pingfederate-directory>/log/server.log`), on both ends, should provide
2233 relevant messages.

2234 In some cases, it may be beneficial to look at the assertions being issued by the IdP and to check for the
2235 expected attributes. This could be done by integrating a demonstration app as a federation client and
2236 debugging the data returned in the assertion. For SAML, projects like SimpleSAMLphp
2237 (<https://simplesamlphp.org/>) provide an implementation that is easy to deploy. It is also possible to
2238 perform this testing without installing additional tools.

2239 One method for SAML is to use Chrome Remote Debugging for Android devices:
2240 <https://developers.google.com/web/tools/chrome-devtools/remote-debugging/>.

2241 By logging the authentication flow in the Network pane of Chrome's developer tools, the SAML response
2242 can be extracted and viewed. The authentication flow with the SAML IdP configured in this practice
2243 guide consists of a series of calls to the `SSO.ping` URL at the IdP. Because the SAML POST binding is used,
2244 the final `SSO.ping` response includes an HTML form that submits the SAML response back to the AS. The
2245 SAML response can be found in an input element in the page content:

```
2246 <input type="hidden" name="SAMLResponse"
2247 value="PHNhbWxwOlJlc3BvbmlfZlcnNpb249IjIuMCIgSUQ9Iko1T2xNNlZxZW51VnpBU2doSH1sakFLYlI
2248 uOCIGSXNzdWVJbnNOYW50PSIyMDE3LTEXLTEzVDEzOjQ5OjE3LjEwMFoiIEluUmVzcG9uc2VUbz0iS2RwMXVfZ
2249 HFPMHlNX2Z0YWVldWJnRjlvMFBYIiBEZXN0aW5hdGlvbj0iaHR0cHM6Ly9pZG0uc2FuZGJveC5tb3RvcM9sYXN
2250 vbHV0aW9ucy5jb20vc3AvQUNTlnNhbWwyIiB4bWxuczpzYW1scD0idXJuOm9hc2lzMm5hbWVzOnRjOlNBTUw6M
2251 i4wOnByb3RvY29sIj48c2FtbDpJc3N1ZXIgeG1sbnM6c2FtbD0idXJuOm9hc2lzMm5hbWVzOnRjOlNBTUw6Mi4
2252 wOmFzc2VydGlvbiI+aWRwMS5zcHNkLm1zc288L3NhbWw6SXNzdWVyPjxkc2pTaWduYXR1cmUgeG1sbnM6ZHM5I
2253 mh0dHA6Ly93d3cudzMub3JnLzIwMDAvMDkveG1sZHNpZyMiPgo8ZHM6U2lnbmVksW5mbz4KPGRzOkNhbm9uaWN
2254 hbG16YXRpb25NZXRob2QgQWxnbn3JpdGhtPSJodHRwOi8vd3d3LnczLm9yZy8yMDAxLzEwL3htbC1leGMtYzE0b
```



```

2304 Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
2305 >>> import base64
2306 >>> import xml.dom.minidom
2307 >>> respFile = open("samlresp.txt", "r")
2308 >>> respStr = base64.b64decode(respFile.read())
2309 >>> respXml = xml.dom.minidom.parseString(respStr)
2310 >>> print(respXml.toprettyxml())
2311 <?xml version="1.0" ?>
2312 <samlp:Response Destination="https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/ACS.saml2"
2313 ID="J50lM6VqeneVzASghHyljAKbR.8" InResponseTo="Kdplu_dq00yM_ftaeeubgF9o0PX"
2314 IssueInstant="2017-11-13T13:49:17.100Z" Version="2.0"
2315 xmlns:samlp="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
2316   <saml:Issuer
2317 xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion">idpl.spsd.mssso</saml:Issuer>
2318   <ds:Signature xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
2319     <ds:SignedInfo>
2320       <ds:CanonicalizationMethod
2321 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2322
2323       <ds:SignatureMethod Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmldsig-
2324 more#rsa-sha256" />
2325       <ds:Reference URI="#J50lM6VqeneVzASghHyljAKbR.8">
2326         <ds:Transforms>
2327           <ds:Transform
2328 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#enveloped-signature" />
2329           <ds:Transform
2330 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/10/xml-exc-c14n#" />
2331           </ds:Transforms>
2332         <ds:DigestMethod
2333 Algorithm="http://www.w3.org/2001/04/xmenc#sha256" />
2334 <ds:DigestValue>lvQiqCU6iYa33vQm+71lElVmiQHZe9s+AM7Pa98VZA=</ds:DigestValue>
2335         </ds:Reference>
2336       </ds:SignedInfo>
2337     </ds:SignatureValue>
2338   </ds:Signature>
2339   <samlp:Status>
2340     <samlp:StatusCode Value="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:status:Success" />
2341   </samlp:Status>
2342   <saml:Assertion ID="H_m.WHGoUQPD.3cVP41XCUXxbGK" IssueInstant="2017-11-
2343 13T13:49:17.155Z" Version="2.0" xmlns:saml="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:assertion">
2344     <saml:Issuer>idpl.spsd.mssso</saml:Issuer>
2345     <saml:Subject>
2346       <saml:NameID Format="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.1:nameid-
2347 format:unspecified">unccoetest4</saml:NameID>
2348       <saml:SubjectConfirmation

```

DRAFT

```
2356 Method="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:cm:bearer">
2357     <saml:SubjectConfirmationData
2358 InResponseTo="Kdplu_dq00yM_ftaeeubgF9o0PX" NotOnOrAfter="2017-11-13T13:54:17.155Z"
2359 Recipient="https://idm.sandbox.motorolasolutions.com/sp/ACS.saml2"/>
2360     </saml:SubjectConfirmation>
2361 </saml:Subject>
2362     <saml:Conditions NotBefore="2017-11-13T13:44:17.155Z" NotOnOrAfter="2017-
2363 11-13T13:54:17.155Z">
2364         <saml:AudienceRestriction>
2365 <saml:Audience>ctoPingFed_entityID</saml:Audience>
2366         </saml:AudienceRestriction>
2367     </saml:Conditions>
2368     <saml:AuthnStatement AuthnInstant="2017-11-13T13:49:17.153Z"
2369 SessionIndex="H_m.WHGoUQPD.3cVP41XCUXxbGK">
2370         <saml:AuthnContext>
2371 <saml:AuthnContextClassRef>urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:unspecified</saml:AuthnContextClassRef>
2372         </saml:AuthnContext>
2373     </saml:AuthnStatement>
2374     <saml:AttributeStatement>
2375         <saml:Attribute Name="uid"
2376 NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:basic">
2377             <saml:AttributeValue
2378 xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2379 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2380 xsi:type="xs:string">unccoetest4</saml:AttributeValue>
2381             </saml:Attribute>
2382         <saml:Attribute Name="mail"
2383 NameFormat="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:attrname-format:basic">
2384             <saml:AttributeValue
2385 xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
2386 xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2387 xsi:type="xs:string">unccoetest4</saml:AttributeValue>
2388             </saml:Attribute>
2389         </saml:AttributeStatement>
2390     </saml:Assertion>
2391 </samlp:Response>
2392
2393
2394 >>>
```

2395 In the above example, two attributes, `uid` and `mail`, are asserted, but the `mail` attribute does not
2396 contain a valid email address.

2397 For OIDC, because the ID Token is retrieved over a back-channel connection between the RP and the
2398 IdP, it cannot be observed in browser traffic. As with SAML, creating a test app is one method of testing,
2399 but manual testing is also possible by using a few software tools:

2400 1. Register an OIDC client with a client secret and a redirect URI that points to a nonexistent
2401 server. A redirect URI value like `https://127.0.0.1/test-url` will work, assuming that you do
2402 not have a web server running on your machine. In a desktop browser, submit an authentication
2403 request with a URL like the one listed below:

2404 *`https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031/as/authorization.oauth2?client_id=marktest&response_type=code&`*
2405 *`scope=openid%20address%20test%20phone%20openid%20profile%20name%20email`*

2406 2. Replace the server name and client ID with the correct values for your environment; also make
2407 sure that the scope parameter includes `openid` and any other expected scopes. Authenticate to
2408 the IdP. In this case, because the FIDO UAF adapter is in use but is being accessed through a
2409 desktop browser, it initiates an OOB authentication, which can be completed on the mobile
2410 device. Once authentication is completed, the browser will attempt to access the redirect URL,
2411 which will result in a connection error because no web server is running on localhost. However,
2412 the authorization code can be extracted from the URL:

2413 *`https://127.0.0.1/test-url?code=lv-pND_3o7_aJ5nFMcD-WbrVENrW7w5V75Cupx9G`*

2414 The authorization code can be submitted to the IdP's token endpoint in a POST to obtain the ID Token.
2415 There are numerous ways to do this. Postman is a simple graphical-user-interface tool for testing APIs,
2416 and can be used to submit the request: <https://www.getpostman.com>.

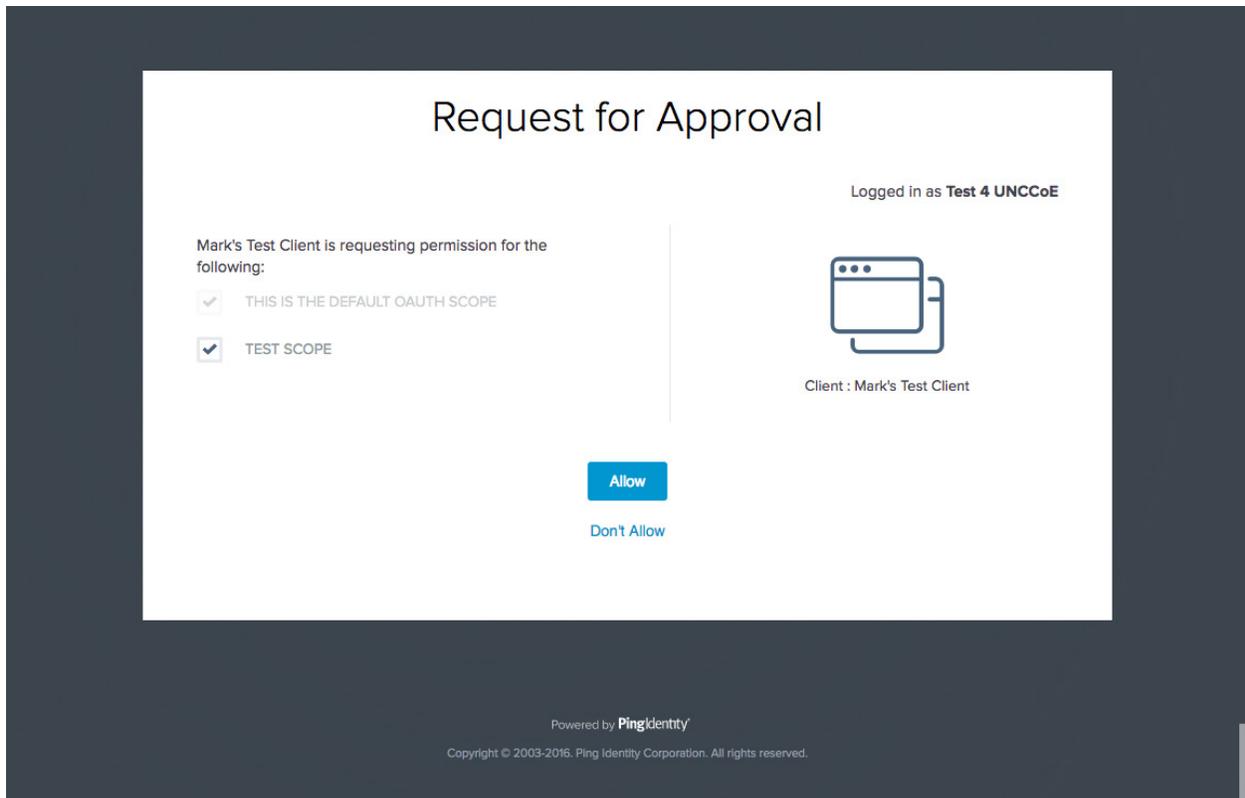
2417 Figure 7-1 shows Postman being used to retrieve an ID Token. A POST request is submitted to the OIDC
2418 IdP's token endpoint; by default, the token endpoint URL is the base URL, followed by `/as/token.oauth2`.
2419 The authorization code is included as a query parameter. The client ID and client secret are used as the
2420 HTTP basic authorization username and password.


```
2444     x3PyTSYAdouYwfo6klUYxoF-bjffGpOg"
2445     >>> idToken = jwt.decode(idTokenStr, verify=False)
2446     >>> print json.dumps(idToken, indent=4)
2447     {
2448         "family_name": "UNCCoE",
2449         "aud": "marktest",
2450         "sub": "unccoetest4",
2451         "iss": "https://op1.lpsd.mssso:9031",
2452         "preferred_username": "unccoetest4",
2453         "updated_at": 1499983978,
2454         "jti": "212kQiNU15oUhnLyA0ULSf",
2455         "given_name": "Test 4",
2456         "exp": 1510586135,
2457         "iat": 1510585835,
2458         "email": "unccoetest4@lpsd.mssso",
2459         "name": "Test 4 UNCCoE"
2460     }
2461     >>>
```

2462 This merely decodes the claims in the JWT without verifying the signature. If there is an issue with
2463 signature validation or trust in the signing key, these errors will be reported in the PingFederate server
2464 log.

2465 7.4 Testing the AS

2466 One simple step that can help identify problems at the AS is turning on the authorization prompts. This
2467 can be done on a per-client basis by deselecting the **BYPASS AUTHORIZATION APPROVAL** setting on the
2468 client configuration page, in the **OAuth Settings** section in the AS console. If the authorization prompt is
2469 displayed (Figure 7-2), this demonstrates that authentication has succeeded, and the list of scopes being
2470 requested by the client is displayed and can be verified.

2471 **Figure 7-2 Authorization Prompt**

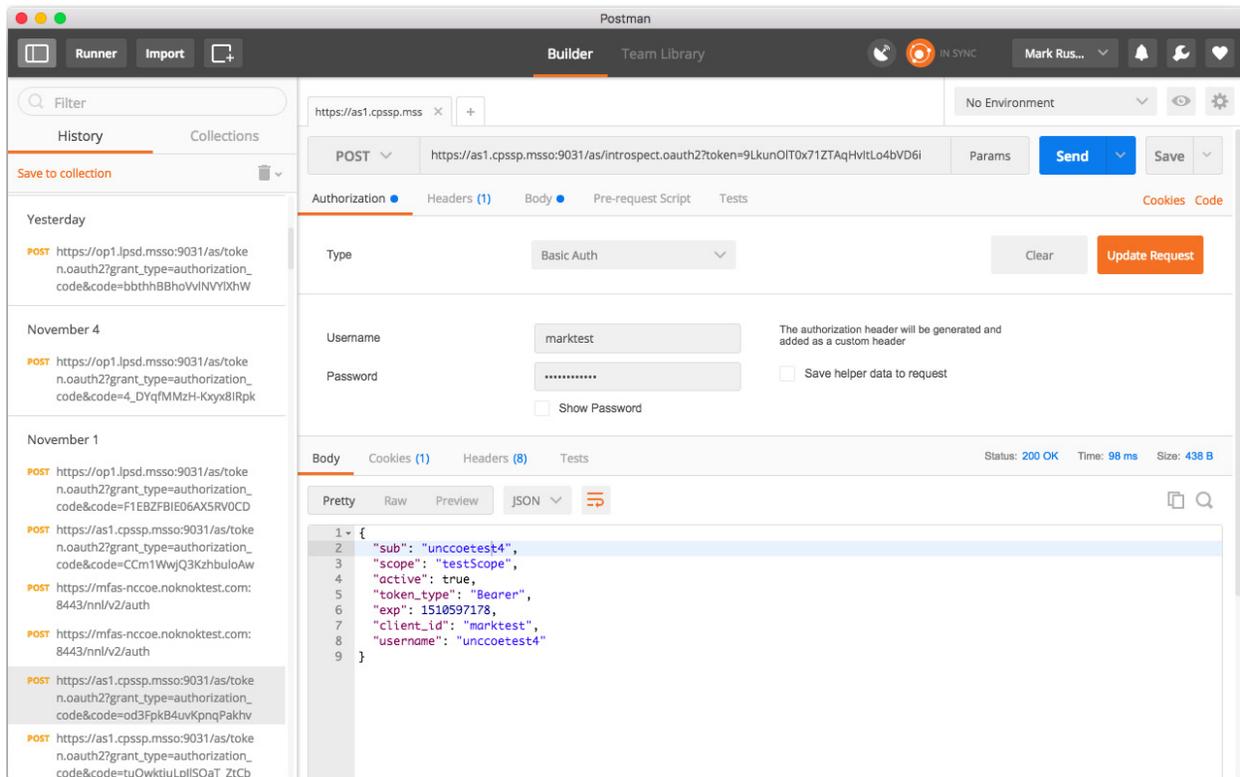
2472

2473 It is also possible to manually obtain an access token by using the same procedure that was used in the
2474 previous section to obtain an ID Token; the only difference is that an OAuth request typically would not
2475 include the `openid` scope. If the issued access token is JWT, it can be analyzed using Python as described
2476 above.

2477 If the token is not a JWT (i.e., a Reference Token management scheme is in use), the access token can be
2478 submitted to the AS's introspection endpoint as specified in RFC 7662 [21]. The default location of the
2479 introspection endpoint for PingFederate is the base URL, followed by `/as/introspect.oauth2`. The request
2480 is submitted as a POST, with the access token in a query parameter called **token**. Basic authentication
2481 can be used with the client ID and secret as a username and password. The client must be authorized to
2482 call the introspection endpoint by selecting **Access Token Validation (Client is a Resource Server)** under
2483 **Allowed Grant Types** in the client configuration on the AS.

2484 Figure 7-3 shows a token introspection request and response in Postman.

2485 **Figure 7-3 Token Introspection Request and Response**



2486

2487 7.5 Testing the Application

2488 One last potential problem area in this SSO architecture is the back-end app, which must accept and
 2489 validate access tokens. Troubleshooting methods there will depend on the design of the app. Building
 2490 robust instrumentation and error reporting into RP apps will help identify problems. If the app validates
 2491 JWT access tokens, then establishing and maintaining trust in the AS's signing certificate, including
 2492 maintenance when the certificate is replaced, is essential to avoid validation problems. Clock
 2493 synchronization between the AS and the RP is also important; a time difference of five minutes or more
 2494 can cause validation errors as well.

2495 **Appendix A Abbreviations and Acronyms**

AD	Active Directory
API	Application Programming Interface
APNS	Apple Push Notification System
App	Application
App ID	Application Identification
AppAuth	Application Authentication System
AS	Authorization Server
ASM	Authenticator-Specific Module
BCP	Best Current Practice
BIND	Berkeley Internet Name Domain
CA	Certificate Authority
CPSSP	Central Public Safety Service Provider
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CRADA	Cooperative Research and Development Agreement
CSR	Certificate Signing Request
DN	Distinguished Name
DNS	Domain Name System
FIDO	Fast Identity Online
FOIA	Freedom of Information Act
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
GB	Gigabyte
GCM	Google Cloud Messenger
GHz	Gigahertz
HSM	Hardware Security Module
HTML	HyperText Markup Language
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
ID	Identification
IdP	Identity Provider
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
iOS	iPhone Operating System
IP	Internet Protocol
IT	Information Technology
JCE	Java Cryptography Extension
JDK	Java Development Kit
JSON	JavaScript Object Notation
JWE	JSON Web Encryption
JWT	JSON Web Token
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LES	Law Enforcement Sensitive

LGPL	Lesser General Public License
LPSD	Local Public Safety Department
MDM	Mobile Device Management
MFA	Multifactor Authentication
MSSO	Mobile Single Sign-On
NAT	Network Address Translation
NCCoE	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
NFC	Near Field Communication
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NNAS	Nok Nok Labs Authentication Server
NTP	Network Time Protocol
OIDC	OpenID Connect
OOB	Out-of-Band
OS	Operating System
PHI	Protected Health Information
PII	Personally Identifiable Information
PIN	Personal Identification Number
PKCE	Proof Key for Code Exchange
PSCR	Public Safety Communications Research lab
PSFR	Public Safety and First Responder
PSX	Public Safety Experience
QR	Quick Response
RAM	Random Access Memory
REST	Representational State Transfer
RFC	Request for Comments
RP	Relying Party
RPM	Red Hat Package Manager
SaaS	Software as a Service
SAML	Security Assertion Markup Language
SDK	Software Development Kit
SE	Standard Edition
SKCE	StrongKey CryptoEngine
SLO	Single Log-Out
SP	Service Provider
SPSD	State Public Safety Department
SQL	Structured Query Language
SSH	Secure Shell
SSO	Single Sign-On
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TEE	Trusted Execution Environment
TLS	Transport Layer Security
U2F	Universal Second Factor

DRAFT

UAF	Universal Authentication Framework
URI	Uniform Resource Identifier
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
USB-C	Universal Serial Bus Type-C
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VPN	Virtual Private Network
WAR	Web Archive

2496 **Appendix B** **References**

- [1] W. Denniss and J. Bradley, "OAuth 2.0 for Native Apps," BCP 212, RFC 8252, DOI 10.17487/RFC8252, October 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc8252>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [2] FIDO Alliance, "FIDO Specifications Overview: UAF & U2F," 20 May 2016. [Online]. Available: <https://www.slideshare.net/FIDOAlliance/fido-specifications-overview-uaf-u2f>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [3] Google, "Chrome custom tabs smooth the transition between apps and the web," Android Developers Blog, 2 September 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://android-developers.googleblog.com/2015/09/chrome-custom-tabs-smooth-transition.html>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [4] Google, "Chrome Custom Tabs," 6 May 2016. [Online]. Available: <https://developer.chrome.com/multidevice/android/customtabs>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [5] Google, "Google Chrome: Fast & Secure," Google Play, [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.android.chrome>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [6] Google, "Google Authenticator," Google Play, [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.google.android.apps.authenticator2>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [7] S. Machani, R. Philpott, S. Srinivas, J. Kemp and J. Hodges, "FIDO UAF Architectural Overview, FIDO Alliance Implementation Draft," 2 February 2017. [Online]. Available: <https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-uaf-v1.1-id-20170202/fido-uaf-overview-v1.1-id-20170202.html>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [8] Nok Nok Labs Inc., "Nok Nok™ Passport," Google Play, [Online]. Available: <https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.noknok.android.passport2>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [9] Motorola Solutions, "PSX App Suite," [Online]. Available: https://www.motorolasolutions.com/en_us/products/psx-app-suite.html. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [10] OpenID Foundation, "openid/AppAuth-Android," GitHub, [Online]. Available: <https://github.com/openid/AppAuth-Android>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].

- [11] D., Hardt, Ed., "The OAuth 2.0 Authorization Framework", RFC 6749, DOI 10.17487/RFC6749," October 2012. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc6749>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [12] S. Cantor, J. Kemp, R. Philpott and E. Maler, "Assertions and Protocols for the OASIS Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) V2.0," 15 March 2005. [Online]. Available: <http://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [13] N. E. Sakimura, J. Bradley and N. Agarwal, "Proof Key for Code Exchange by OAuth Public Clients," RFC 7636, DOI 10.17487/RFC7636, September 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://www.rfc-editor.org/info/rfc7636>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [14] M. Jones and J. Hildebrand, "JSON Web Encryption (JWE)," RFC 7516, May 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7516>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [15] N. Sakimura, J. Bradley, M. Jones, B. de Medeiros and C. Mortimore, "OpenID Connect Core 1.0 incorporating errata set 1," 8 November 2014. [Online]. Available: http://openid.net/specs/openid-connect-core-1_0.html. [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [16] Microsoft Corporation, "Active Directory Schema," [Online]. Available: [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms675085\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms675085(v=vs.85).aspx). [Accessed 25 February 2018].
- [17] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok Labs S3 Authentication Suite Solution Guide," v5.1.1, 2017.
- [18] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok Authentication Server Administration Guide," v5.1.1, 2017.
- [19] Nok Nok Labs, Inc., "Nok Nok PingFederate Adapter Integration Guide," v1.0.1, 2017.
- [20] StrongAuth, Inc., "PingFederate FIDO IdP Adapter Installation Guide," Revision 2, 2017.
- [21] J. Richer, Ed., "OAuth 2.0 Token Introspection," RFC 7662, October 2015. [Online]. Available: <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7662>. [Accessed 25 February 2018].